

ODESSA NATIONAL MEDICAL UNIVERSITY

**Department of foreign languages**

**Tetyana Pyslar, Liubov Netrebchuk, Liubov Morar**

# **PROFESSIONAL LATIN FOR PHARMACISTS**

Odessa  
2019

**UDC 811.124**  
**LBC 81.2 Latin. – 923**  
**P84**

*Autors:* **T.P. Pyslar, L.M. Netrebchuk, L.A. Morar**

*Reviewers:* **O.M.Bieliaieva**, PhD, Associate professor, the head of department of foreign languages with Latin and medical terminology, Ukrainian Medical Dental Academy;

**M.D.Marinashvili**, PhD, Associate professor, the head of department of French philology, Odessa I.I.Mechnikov National University.

This manual is meant for foreign students studying the course “Latin and Pharmaceutical Terminology” at Parmaceutical Faculty (the language of instruction: English).

© T.P.Pyslar, L.M.Netrebchuk,  
L.A.Morar, 2019

# Content

<b>Preface.....</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Unit 1</b>	
Phonetics. Pronunciation of vowels, consonants, letter-combinations. Duration and brevity of vowels.	
Peculiarities of stress in words of Greek origin.....	9
<b>Unit 2</b>	
The Verb. Four Participle forms. The base of present tense. Main forms.	
Plural and singular forms of the second person. Imperative form.....	18
<b>Unit 3</b>	
The Noun - Nomen Substantivum. Grammar categories of the noun. Dictionary form.	
First declension of nouns. Greek nouns of the first declension. Uncoordinated attribute.	
Prepositions and conjunctions that are used in pharmaceutical terminology.....	23
<b>Unit 4</b>	
The Verb. Praesens indicativi activi et passivi of verbs. The verb "esse".	
Conjunctivus in prescriptions. Verb "fio, fieri". Praesens Indicativi activi et passivi.....	34
<b>Unit 5</b>	
Prescription. Parts of prescription. Grammatical structure of formation of prescription line.	
Simple and complex prescription. Some important rules for making up the Latin part of medical prescription.....	40
<b>Unit 6</b>	
Nouns of the II declension. Peculiarities of declension of the neuter gender.	
Exceptins from the gender of nouns of the II declension.....	49
<b>Unit 7</b>	
<i>Systematization and consolidation of grammatical models of terms.....</i>	54
<b>Unit 8</b>	
Trivial names of medical substances. Main stems in names of medicines of Greek-Latin origin.	
Nomenclature of vitamins and preparations of combined multivitamins, hormone and enzyme preparations.....	55
<b>Unit 9</b>	
Adjectives. Grammatical categories of the adjective. Two groups of adjectives.	
Adjectives of the 1-st group. Algoritm of coordination of adjectives with nouns.....	63
<b>Unit 10</b>	
Names creation of medical preparations according to the pharmacological influence.	
Main suffixes of adjectives of the 1-st and 2-nd declensions.....	70
<b>Unit 11</b>	
Past participle passive. Names of serum, vaccine and toxoids.....	74

<b>Unit 12</b>	
The III declension of nouns. Determination of gender, base and type of declension.	
Nouns of the masculine gender of III declension. Exceptiones from the rules of genders.....	79
<b>Unit 13</b>	
Nouns of the feminine gender of the III declension. Exceptions from the rules of gender.....	85
<b>Unit 14</b>	
Nouns of the neuter gender of the III declension.....	90
<b>Unit 15</b>	
Peculiarities of declension of Greek nouns with the same amount syllables of the feminine gender ending with -sis.....	94
<b>Unit 16</b>	
<i>Systematization and consolidation of grammatical models of terms.....</i>	99
<b>Unit 17</b>	
Adjectives of the 3-rd declension. Declension and coordination with nouns.	
Main suffixes of adjectives of the III declension.....	100
<b>Unit 18</b>	
Adjectives of the 3-rd declension in botanic names and names of medical substances.	
Pharmaceutical phrases.....	106
<b>Unit 19</b>	
Present participle active. Declension. Names of ingredients in complex prescription.	
Pharmaceutical phrases.....	111
<b>Unit 20</b>	
Chemical nomenclature. Names of chemical elements, acids, oxides, salts.	
Greek numerals prefixes in chemical nomenclature.....	116
<b>Unit 21</b>	
Names of salts. Names of acid and hydrocarbon radicals.	
Names of ethers.....	123
<b>Unit 22</b>	
Word-building. IV-V declension of nouns. Declension. Pharmaceutical phraseological phrases.	
Peculiarities of using noun "species".....	128
<b>Unit 23</b>	
<i>Systematization and consolidation of grammatical models of terms.....</i>	134
<b>Unit 24</b>	
Bionominal botanical nomenclature. Grammatical models of botanical names.	
Names of alkaloids and glycosides. Bionominal botanical nomenclature.....	136

<b>Unit 25</b>	
Degrees of comparison of adjectives. Irregular degrees of comparison.....	145
<b>Unit 26</b>	
Adverb. Adverbs` degrees of comparison. Powder names by the degree of grinding. Numerals.	
Pronouns. Special expressions with pronouns in the pharmaceutical terminology.....	151
<b>Unit 27</b>	
Abbreviations in prescriptions. The most important prescription abbreviations.....	162
<b>Unit 28</b>	
Latin nomenclature of native medical forms. Firm, soft, and liquid forms of medicines.	
Lay out of prescriptions for firm medical remedies.....	171
<b>Unit 29</b>	
Systematization of information about prepositions.....	184
<b>Unit 30</b>	
Revision test.....	188
<b>Latin-english vocabulary</b>	189
<b>English-latin vocabulary</b>	201
<b>Literature</b>	212

OnMedU

## PREFACE

The subject you are going to study is the Latin Language.

From the school course of world history you can remember, that many centuries ago, where nowadays Italy is, there was the Roman Empire. The Roman state which included many lands and people existed till 464 A.D. And initially, Rome was a small town, founded by an Italian tribe in 753 B.C. and Latin was its native language. Gradually, century after century, Rome became the most powerful state of the Mediterranean and Latin was widespread and acknowledged.

An event of tremendous historical importance for both Rome and the future of European culture was the Roman conquest of Greece, the motherland of European culture and science. The Greek physician Hippocrates is namely considered to be the founder of European scientific medicine. Hippocrates and other Greek physicians made a great contribution into the development of medicine, that's why Greek medicine was extremely popular and prestigious among the population of the Mediterranean area. For this reason, Greek medical and pharmaceutical terms were borrowed into Latin and came into use in different countries. So originally the European medical and pharmaceutical terminology was formed on the basis of Greek and Latin words. The English *pharmacy* derives from Greek word *pharmakeia* – formation and usage of medicines.

The course of Latin for the Pharmacy students at the Medical University you are going to study is to acquire elementary knowledge of Latin grammar, which enables students to understand the pharmaceutical terminology and the structure of medical prescriptions.

This material is learned in the course of an academic term; each lesson is once a week. Each new lesson includes your teacher's explanation of the topic of the lesson, but the main bulk of work for you is your home task.

A specific feature of studying is written control of checking home task preparation at every lesson. Besides this regular test control, 3 written tests (for 90 minutes) are

provided. The purpose of these tests is to control the knowledge of the entire material of each part of the course.

At every lesson, you will first work orally, checking the home task with your teacher, and then your knowledge will be controlled in written form (while books and notebooks are closed). The principal way to this knowledge is your own persistent work with your textbook memorizing Latin words and rules of its grammar.

ONMedU

# Unit 1

**Theme: Phonetics. Pronunciation of vowels, consonants, letter-combinations. Duration and brevity of vowels. Peculiarities of stress in words of Greek origin.**

Letter	Name	Pronunciation	Latin examples and their transcription	English equivalents
<b>A a</b>	a	( <b>α</b> )	<u>arbor</u>	tree
<b>B b</b>	be	( <b>β</b> )	<u>bursa</u>	bag
<b>C c</b>	tse	( <b>ts</b> ) - if <b>c</b> stands before <b>e, i, y, ae, oe.</b>  ( <b>k</b> ) - if <b>c</b> stands before <b>a, o, u, consonants and at the end of the word</b>	<u>cito</u> <u>cera</u> <u>capsula</u> <u>Cassia</u> <u>lac</u>	quikly wax capsule senna milk
<b>D d</b>	de	( <b>d</b> )	<u>dosis</u>	dose
<b>E e</b>	e	( <b>e</b> ) <i>as in "met"</i>	<u>elixir</u>	elixir
<b>F f</b>	ef	( <b>f</b> )	<u>fel</u>	bile
<b>G g</b>	ge	( <b>g</b> ) <i>as in "get"</i>	<u>gutta</u>	drop
<b>H h</b>	ha	( <b>h</b> ) <i>like English "heart", "here"</i>	<u>hepar</u>	liver
<b>I i</b>	i	( <b>i</b> ) <i>as in "sit"</i>	<u>infans</u>	child
<b>J j</b>	yot	( <b>j</b> ) <i>like English "yes", "you"</i>	major	major
<b>K k</b>	ka	( <b>k</b> )	<u>Kalium</u>	potassium
<b>L l</b>	el	( <b>l</b> ) <i>as in English "life"</i>	<u>lagena</u>	bottle
<b>M m</b>	em	( <b>m</b> )	<u>massa</u>	mass

<b>N n</b>	en	(n)  <b>ngu:</b> as /ngv/ before <b>vowels</b> as /ngu/ before <b>consonants</b>	<u>numerus</u>  <u>lingua</u> /lingvʌ/  <u>lingula</u> /lingulʌ/	number  tongue, language  small tongue
<b>O o</b>	o	(o)	<u>oleum</u>	oil
<b>P p</b>	pe	(p)	<u>pilula</u>	pill
<b>Q q</b>	ku	(kv) together with vowel <b>u</b>	<u>Quercus</u> <u>quartus</u>	oak four
<b>R r</b>	er	(r)	<u>ruber</u>	red
<b>S s</b>	es	(s) as ( <b>z</b> ) between vowels and between a vowel and consonants “m/n” in the words of Greek origin	<u>sirupus</u> <u>Rosa</u> <u>organismus</u>	sirup rose organism
<b>T t</b>	te	(t) as ( <b>tsi</b> ) before vowels as ( <b>ti</b> ) before consonants, after <b>s, t, x</b>	<u>tabuletta</u> <u>solutio</u> <u>mixtio</u>	tablet solution mixing
<b>U u</b>	u	(u)	<u>Urtica</u>	nettle
<b>V v</b>	ve	(v)	<u>Valeriana</u>	valerian
<b>X x</b>	iks	(ks)	<u>Xeroformium</u>	xeroform
<b>Y y</b>	epsilon	(i)	<u>Hydrogenium</u>	hydrogen
<b>Z z</b>	zeta	(z) (ts)	<u>Oryza</u> <u>Zincum</u>	rice zinc

## The diphthongs.

Combination of two different vowels in one syllable pronounced as one sound is called a diphthong. In Latin there are four diphthongs: **ae**, **oe**, **au**, **eu**.

**ae** – (e) – aether

**oe** – (e) – oedema

**au** – (au) – Aurum

**eu** – (eu) – pneumonia

Some vowels happen to stand next to each other, but they don't form the diphthong and should be pronounced separately; in this case two points are put over the second vowel:

**aër** – air.

## The digraphs.

Combination of two consonants pronounced as one sound is called a digraph. They are used mainly in words loaned from the Greek language.

**ch** - (h) – charta

**ph** - (f) – pharmaceuta

**th** - (t) – therapia

**rh** - (r) – Rheum

## The rules of stress:

**1.** If a word consists of two syllables, there is always only one stress: the first syllable is stressed:

**ól-la**

**frúc-tus**

**hó-mo**

**2.** In polysyllabic words consisting of three and more syllables, the second or third syllables from the end of the word can be stressed. The stress depends on the length or

brevity of the second syllable from the end of the word: if it is long, it is stressed, if it is short, it can not be stressed and then the third word end syllable is stressed.

3. The length and brevity of the second syllable and particularly in textbooks are usually marked by special signs: a short line is placed over the vowel if it is long, and a little arch — if it is short, compare:

**ā – ā̄, ē – ē̄, ī – ī̄, ō – ō̄, ū – ū̄, y – Ÿ.**

So, if we find such words as *tinctūra*, *spirituōsus*, *fractūra* etc. in the dictionary, we can instantly determine, that such words have an accent on the second syllable from the end.

There exist some rules helping us to determine at once the length or brevity of the second end syllable, or more simply of the second end vowel. First of all, there are suffixes containing vowels, which are long or short by nature. Such suffixes called accordingly “**long**” or “**short**” can give us guidance about the length or brevity of the second end vowel.

### **The rules of syllable length determination:**

In some cases we can determine the syllable length or brevity with the help of certain rules:

1. The syllable is long, when its vowel is placed before two or more consonants: *lamēlla*, *sinīster* (*left*).
2. The syllable is long, when it includes the diphthongs **au**, **eu** or **ae**, **oe**: *amoeba* (*ameba*), *diaeta* (*diet*), *Althaea* (*althea*).
3. The syllable is long when its vowel is placed before the consonants **x** or **z**: *reflēxus* (*reflex*), *Orýza* (*rise*).

### **The rules of brevity of syllable:**

1. The syllable is short when its vowel is placed before another vowel:

*linēa* (*line*), *superīor* (*higher, upper*), *cornūa* (*horn*), *Aluminīum* (*aluminium*).

2. When the vowel is short by nature (it is shown in the dictionary) and it is placed before two consonants, first of which being **b**, **c**, **d**, **g**, **p**, **t** and the second is **l** or **r**, this short vowel is pronounced short:

*Ephēdra(ephedra), multiplex (multiple).*

3. The syllable is short when its vowel is placed before the digraphs **ch**, **ph**, **rh**, **th**:

*Arāchis - peanut.*

4. The vowel is short before **h**: *contrāho (I connect).*

### Long suffixes

Suffixes of the nouns **-ūr-**, **-ān-**, **-īn-** (if after its stands ending **-um**).

Suffixes of the Adjectives **-āt-**, **-ōs-**, **-āl-**:

*tinctūra – tinture*

*Valeriāna – valeriane*

*Aspirīnum – aspirin*

*aquōsus – watery*

In many words the second vowel from the word end is placed before a consonant, but this vowel is not a part of a common long or short suffix. In such cases we can determine its length or brevity controlling those peculiarities of the given word in the textbook vocabulary.

The Latin pharmaceutical terms are formed by combination of frequent sections of terminological elements. It is necessary to memorize the most frequent word-building elements met in the pharmaceutical terminology:

**-aesth-** (feeling, sensation) – anaesthesia

**-anaesthes-** (loss of sensation) – Anaesthesia, i n

**-barb-** (barbituric acid) – Barbamylum, i n

**-cardi-** (heart) – Cardiovalenum, i n

**-chol-** (bile) – Alacholum, i n

**-cillinum** (antibiotics of penicillin group) – Penicillinum, i n

**-cyan-** (blue) – cyanidum

**-cycl-** (circle) – Tetracyclinum, i n

**-erythr-** (red) – erythrocytes

**-glyc-** (sweet) – Corgluconum, i n

**-haemo, -aemia** (blood) – Haematogenum, i n – anaemia

**-hydr-** (water) – Hydrogenium, i n

**-lys, -lyt** (resorption , resolution) – Phytolysinum,i n

**-myc-** (mushroom) – Neomycinum, i n

**-myl-** (substance) – Amylum,i n

**-oxy-** (sour) – Oxygenium, i n

**-phen-** (phenol) – Phenacetinum, i n

**-pyr-** (fever) – Antipyrinum, i n

**-sulfa-** (sulphur) – Sulphaperidosinum, i n

**-thyr-** (the thyroid gland) – Thyrotropinum, i n

**-pharm-** (medicines) – pharmacotherapia

### *Self-control:*

1. How many letters are there in the Latin alphabet?
2. What is a diphthong?
3. What is a digraph?
4. What is the pronunciation of the letter **c**, if it stands before **e, i, y, ae, oe**?
5. What is the pronunciation of the letter **c**, if it stands before **a, o, u** and at the end of the word?
6. What syllable is stressed in double-words?
7. What syllable is stressed in polysyllabic words?
8. What syllable is long and why?
9. What noun suffixes are always long?
10. What suffixes are short?

## **Exercises for reading:**

### **1. Read paying attention to the pronunciation of diphthongs.**

Octoestrólum, **Oestradiólum**, Haematogénium, paedíáter, idáeus, **oedéma**, áer, Aëvitum, pro roentgénō, purpúreus, **Áurum**, áureus, Raunatínum, **Rhéum**, séu, praescribere, áuctor, Foenículum, Eucalýptus, Leucogénium, Cratáegus, audíre, lúteus, Alóë.

### **2. Read, paying attention to the pronunciation of digraphs ch, ph, th, rh:**

chóle, **Phósphorus**, Théa, rhizóma, **Rhéum**, Ortthosíphon, Chlórum, Rhámnus cathártica, Líthium, Chamomilla, phóbia, Thiopentálum, Thyreoidínium, pharmacopóeia, chárta, Chenopódium, Schisándra, Méntha, **Chína**.

### **3. Read aloud, paying attention to the pronunciation of the sound (c) in the following words:**

céra, scátula, sácculus, coeruléum, Cítrus, Cacáo, Cucurbíta, cytológia, Tetracyclínum, Cimicifúga, bácca, médicus, Ricínus, Accácia, cíto, salicýlicus, vaccínum, decóctum, Sálvia, cámphora, Cássia, Caléndula, Centauréa cyánus, cum, acidum, gúmmi Armeniácae.

### **4. Read aloud , paying attention to the pronunciation of the sounds h, g:**

Hydrárgyrum, hómo, hormónum, Hydrogénium, Sénega, éxtraho, Haematogénium, Heliánthus, Gossýpium, glándula, gémma, hora, adhibére, gútta, gangráena.

### **5. Read aloud, single out the frequent sections and explain their meaning :**

Valocardínum, Bicillinum, Amycazólum, Erythromycínum, Mycosolónum, **Barbamýlum**, Gentamycínum, Synthomycínum, Phenobarbitálum, Glycerínum, Glucósum, Hydrocortisónum, Aspyrínum, Cholenzýmum, Dipyrídolamólum.

### **6. Read the following words paying special attention to the vowel pronunciation:**

gútta (drop), ólla (galipot), Caléndula (calendula), sírupus (syrup), cápsula (capsule), Heliánthus (sunflower), púlvís (powder), Línum (flax), fólium (leave), rectális (rectal),

Adónis vernális (spring Adonis), tabulétta (tablet), frúctus (fruit), unguéntum (ointment).

**7. Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the letter c:**

cáput (head), cervicális (cervical), cérebrum (brain), cútis (skin), Ácidum acético (acetic acid), síccus (dry), fácies (face, surface), coccygéus (coccygeal), coerúleus (blue), caécum (caecum), búccae (cheeks), carcinóma (cancer), sáccus lacrimális (lacrimal sac).

**8. Read aloud:**

extractum Leonūri fluďum; linimentum Aloës; rhizōma cum radicībus Valeriānae; sirūpus ex fructībus Rosae; solutio “Testosterōnum” pro injectionībus; suppositoria vaginalia cum Synthomycīno; tabuletæ Aspirīni obductæ; tinctūra foliōrum Eucalypti; unguentum Dibiomycini ophthalmīcum.

**9. Read the terms and place the stress:**

gutta, Calendula, Arnica, Tilia, species antiasthmatica, tincture Valeriana, Oryza, contraho, gelatinosus, Strophanthus, mixtura, solutio, tabuletta, Aloë, Adonis vernalis, Urtica, chloridum, Methylenum coeruleum, pharmacopoea, citricum, Kalanchoë, hydrochloridum, glandula, camphoratus, Belladonna.

**10. Determine what syllable is long and why:**

lamella, Frangula, aquosus, cardialis, medicus, camphoratus, pilula, Lavandula, Kanamycinum, Salmonella, Phosphorus, medicus, amicus, pertussis, aceticum, benzolum, linimentum, fructus, decoctum, folium, obductus, suppositorium, globulus.

**11. Define what syllable is stressed:**

cerá, sácculus, Citrus, Cacao, Cucurbita, cytología, Tetracyclinum, bacca, medicus, Ricinus, salicílicus, decoctum, Salvia, Linum, camphora, homo, Helianthus, gemma, gutta, glandula, gangraena, gummi, aqua, massa, emplastrum, axungia, fructus, succus.

## Vocabulary

**aërosolum, i n** – aerosol  
**gutta, ae f** – drop  
**emplastrum, i n** – plaster  
**pulvis, ēris m** – powder  
**tabuletta, ae f** – tablet  
**tabuletta obducta** – coated tablet  
**suspensio, ūnis f** – suspension  
**pilula, ae f** – pill  
**infusum, i n** – infusion  
**capsula, ae f** – capsule  
**capsula amylacea** – starch capsule  
**capsula gelatinosa** – gelatinous capsule  
**granulum, i n** – granule  
**pasta, ae f** – paste  
**solutio, ūnis f** – solution  
**emulsum, i n** – emulsion  
**decoctum, i n** – decoction  
**species, ēi f** – medicinal species

**Valeriana, ae f** – valerian  
**extractum, i n** – extract  
**fluīdus, a um** – liquid  
**folium, i n** – leaf  
**fructus, us m** – fruit  
**injectio, ūnis f** – injection  
**Leonūrus, i m** – motherwort  
**linimentum, i n** – liniment  
**obductus, a, um** – coated  
**ophthalmīcūs, a, um** – ophthalmic  
**radix, īcis f** – root  
**rhizōma, ātis n** – rhizome  
**sirūpus, i m** – syrup  
**sirupus medicinalis** – medicinal syrup  
**suppositorium, i n** – suppository  
**tinctūra, ae f** – tincture  
**unguentum, i n** – ointment  
**vaginālis, e** – vaginal

## Unit 2

**Theme: The Verb. Four Participle forms. The base of present tense.**

**Main forms. Plural and singular forms of the second person.**

**Imperative form.**

The Latin Verbs can be changed in *person, numbers, tenses and moods*.

The Verbs have *three persons, two numbers (sing. and plur.), six tenses, two voices: Active (Activum) and Passive (Passivum)*.

The Active voice denotes the action which performed by the subject and the Passive Voice means the action which is performed with subject.

Depending on the final sound of the base the verbs are divided into four conjugations.

<i>I conjugation</i>	<i>II conjugation</i>	<i>III conjugation</i>	<i>IV conjugation</i>
-a	- e	<b>consonant sound or -u</b>	-i

**The dictionary form of the verbs in the dictionaries includes:**

1. full form of the 1-st person (Presens indicativi activi) - the ending **-o**;
2. the ending of the infinitive **-re** with the preceding vowel.

At the end of the dictionary form there is a figure which denotes conjugation which may be determined by vowel sound standing before **-re**.

Examples of the dictionary form of the verbs:

**signo, āre 1** – to denote

**habeo, ēre 2** – to have

**addo, īre 3** – to add

**diluo, īre 3** – to dilute

**audio, īre 4** – to hear

In the **2** and **3** conjugations the vowel **-e** differs not only in length, in the **2** conjugation it is related to the base, but in the **3** one it is a connective vowel and stands between the base and the ending.

## Determination of the base.

The base is determined by the form of the infinitive, if the ending **-re** is thrown off in verbs of **1, 2, and 4** conjugation and **-ĕre** - in verbs of **3** conjugation.

<i>The dictionary form</i>	<i>Conjugation</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>To throw off</i>	<i>Base</i>
do, dāre	1	dare	-re	da-
habeo, ēre	2	habere	-re	habe-
addo, ěre	3	addere	-ere	add-
diluo, ěre	3	diluere	-ere	dilu-
finio, īre	4	finire	-re	fini-

## The imperative form

The imperative mood expresses a direct order. The verb has the form of the 2nd person singular or plural.

The imperative mood in singular is formed by throwing away from the infinitive form of the verb ending **-re**. The Imperative of the verbs of **1, 2 and 4** conjugations in singular coincides with the verb stem.

The connective vowel **-ĕ** stands between the base and the ending in verbs of **3** conjugation.

The imperative mood in plural of 1,2 and 4 conjugations is formed by adding the ending **-te** to the stem of the verb, and the 3 conjugation by adding the ending **-ite**.

<i>Infinitivus</i>	<i>Conjugation</i>	<i>Imperativus singularis</i>	<i>Imperativus pluralis</i>
dare	1	da - give	date
miscere	2	misce - mix	miscete
solvere	3	solve - dissolve	solvite
diluere	3	dilue - dilute	diluite
audire	4	audi - hear	audite

After verbs in the form of an imperative mood the noun always stands in the accusative case without a preposition.

***Control questions:***

1. What is the dictionary form of verbs?
2. How is the base of the verbs determined?
3. How many conjugations does Latin verb have?
4. What are the characteristic signs of the conjugations?

**Exercises**

**1. Define the base of the verbs:**

repeto, ēre; addo, ēre; misceo, ere; verto, ēre; steriliso, āfe; finio, īre; diluo, ēre; recipio, ēre; audio, īre; obduco, ēre.

**2. Fill the missed vowels:**

recipio, ...re 3; steriliso, ...re 1; audio, ...re 4; verto, ...re 3; vivo, ...re 3; sano, ...re 1; adhibeo, ...re 2; nutria, ...re 4; do, d...re 1; diluo, ...re 3; distinduo, ...re 3; studio, ...re 2; laboro, ...re 1; signo, ...re 1.

**3. Define the conjugation of the following verbs:**

curo, curāre – to treat; praeparo, praeparāre – to prepare; misceo, miscēre – to mix; distinguo, distinguēre – to distinguish; tero, terēre – to rub; absorbeo, absorbēre – to absorb; inficio, inficīre – to infect; moveo, movēre – to move; vivo, vivēre – to live; nomino, nomināre – to name.

**4. Translate into Latin, write down the dictionary form:**

to mix; to divide; to percolate; to treat; to boil; to give; to add; to divide; to dilute; to finish; to listen; to use; to give; to filter.

## 5. Form Imperative singular of verbs:

addere, repetere, dāre, signāre, miscēre, dividere, continere, finīre, colligere, formāre, sterilisāre, vertere, curāre, audīre, diluēre, salvēre, habere, recipere, iservīre.

## 6. Translate aloud the verbs in Imperative form into English:

1. Misce. 2. Da. 3. Signa. 4 Audi. 5. Salve, salvete. 6. Concide. 7. Vale, valete. 8. Repete. 9. Divide. 10. Solve. 11. Audi. 12. Dilue. 11. Serva. 12. Recipe. 13. Sume. 14. Praepara. 15. Bibe. 16. Adde. 17. Cola.

## Vocabulary

### Verbs:

**addo, ēre 3** – to add

**adhibeo, ēre 2** – to use

**affero, ērre 3** – to bring

**affigo, ēre 3** – to fasten

**alo, ēre 3** – to feed

**ascendo, ēre 3** – to ascend

**audio, īre 4** – to listen

**bibo, ēre 3** – to drink

**cognosce, ēre 3** – to recognize

**concido, ēre 3** – to cut

**conjungo, ēre 3** – to join

**contundo, ēre 3** – to pound

**colligo, ēre 3** – to collect

**collo, āre 1** – to color

**consto, āre 1** – to consist

**contraho, ēre 3** – to contract

**extendo, ēre 3** – spread

**filto, āre 1** – to filter

**finio, īre 4** – to finish

**formo, āre 1** – to form

**habeo, ēre 2** – to have

**inservio, īre 4** – to serve

**linio, īre 4** – to spread

**misceo, ēre 2** – to mix up

**nutrio, īre 4** – to feed

**percolo, āre 1** – to percolate

**praeparo, āre 1** – to prepare

**recipio, ēre 3** – to take

**repeto, ēre 3** – to repeat

**servo, āre 1** – to keep

**salveo, ēre 2** – to be healthy, be well

(a verb is used at greeting)

<b>coquo, ēre 3</b> – to boil	<b>signo, āre 1</b> – to denote
<b>curo, āre 1</b> – to treat	<b>steriliso, āre 1</b> – to sterilize
<b>divido, ēre 3</b> – to divide	<b>sumo, ēre 3</b> – to use (internal)
<b>diluo, ēre 3</b> – to dilute	<b>valeo, ēre 2</b> – to be healthy, be strong
<b>do, āre 1</b> – to give, give out	(verb is used at farewell)
<b>exprimo, ēre 3</b> – to press out	<b>verto, ēre 3</b> – to turn, invert
	<b>vivo, ēre 3</b> – to live

OnMedU

## Unit 3

**Theme: The Noun - Nomen Substantivum.**

**Grammar categories of the noun. Dictionary form.**

**First declension of nouns. Greek nouns of the first declension.**

**Uncoordinated attribute. Prepositions and conjunctions that are used in pharmaceutical terminology.**

The Latin Noun has three genders:

masculine – **genus masculinum (m)**

feminine – **genus femininum (f)**

neuter – **genus neutrum (n)**

The noun has two numbers:

singular – **numerus singularis**

plural – **numerus pluralis**

The Latin noun has six cases:

**Nominativus (Nom.)** – nominative case (answers the questions **who?** **what?**)

**Genetivus (Gen.)** – genitive case (answers the questions **whose?** **of what?**)

**Dativus (Dat.)** – dative case (answers the question **whom?**)

**Accusativus (Acc.)** – accusative case (answers the question **whom?** **what?**)

**Ablativus (Abl.)** – ablative case (answers the question **by whom?** **with what?**)

**Vocativus (Voc.)** – vocative case is not used in medical and pharmaceutical terminology.

Case as a grammar category is not presented in every language. As to English, we can speak about a “common case” and a “possessive case”. In contrast to English there are six different forms of noun endings corresponding to each case.

The indication of the grammar gender of the Latin nouns is the ending of Nom. sing. You should bear in mind that the sign of masculine gender in Nom. sing. is ending **-us** (**succus** - juice, **sirupus** - syrup).

The sign of the feminine gender is ending **-a** (**bacca** - berry, **gemma** - bud).

The sign of the neuter gender is ending - **um** (**folium** - leaf, **extractum** - extract).

### Dictionary form.

All nouns are written in the dictionary form, which consists of three components:

- 1) the form in Nom. sing.,
- 2) ending in Gen. sing.,
- 3) gender (m, f, n).

For example: *gemma, ae f; sirupus , i m.*

### Declension

The Latin noun has five declensions, which are distinguished by case endings.

The declension of the nouns is determined by the ending in Gen. sing.

<i>Declension</i>	I	II	III	IV	V
<i>Nom. sing.</i>	herba (herb)	infusum (infusion)	sapor (taste)	spiritus (alcohol)	rabies (hydrophobia)
<i>Gen. sing.</i>	herbae	infusi	saporis	spiritus	rabiei

Case endings of Nouns of the I - V declensions:

<i>Ending of Genitive sing.</i>	<i>Declension</i>
-ae	I
-i	II
-is	III
-us	IV
-ei	V

## Determination of the base of the nouns of I-V declensions.

The base is a part of the word without any ending. The base should be defined by Gen.sing. you must throw aside the ending. The base in nouns of III declension doesn't always coincide with the form of Nom. sing. In the dictionary form we may find out whether the base coincides with Nom. sing. If it does not coincide, the last part of the base with the ending of the declension or complete form in Gen. sing are written after the word in Nom sing.

For example: Nom. sing. **injectio, onis f** (injection);

Gen. sing. **injectionis**; the base is **injection-**

## Nouns of the I-st declension

The nouns with the ending **-a** in the Nominative singular belong to the 1-st declension; they are mainly feminine having in Gen. sing ending **-ae**:

For example: **aqua, ae f** – water

**capsula, ae f** – capsule

## Case endings of Nouns of the I-st declension

<i>Casus</i>	<i>Singularis</i>	<i>Pluralis</i>
Nom.	<b>- a</b>	<b>- ae</b>
Gen.	<b>- ae</b>	<b>- arum</b>
Dat.	<b>- ae</b>	<b>- is</b>
Acc.	<b>- am</b>	<b>- as</b>
Abl.	<b>- a</b>	<b>- is</b>

## Model of declension of Nouns of the I-st declension:

**camphora** - camphor, stem: **camphor-**

<i>Case</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>English</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	camphora	camphor
<i>Gen.</i>	camphorae	of camphor
<i>Dat.</i>	camphorae	camphor
<i>Acc.</i>	camphoram	camphor
<i>Abl.</i>	camphora	with, by, from, in camphor

<i>Case</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>English</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	camphorae	camphors
<i>Gen.</i>	camphorarum	of camphors
<i>Dat.</i>	camphoram	camphors
<i>Acc.</i>	camphoras	camphors
<i>Abl.</i>	camphoris	with, by, from, in camphors

### Greek nouns of the first declension.

In pharmaceutical Latin quite a number of nouns derived from the Greek retain some of their original Greek endings.

To the I-st declension belong nouns of feminine gender of Greek origin, which have in Nom. sing. ending **-e**, and in Gen. sing. ending **-es**. You should learn the dictionary form of these nouns :

For example: **Alöe, es** f – aloe

**chole, es** f – bile

## **Uncoordinated attribute. The model of names of tinctures.**

The attribute may be coordinated and uncoordinated. Coordinated attributes are expressed by adjectives, they follow the defined word and are coordinated with it in gender, number and case.

For example: **vitrum** (n., Nom. sing) **nigrum** (n., Nom. sing) – black glass

**succus** (m., Nom. sing) **amarus** (m., Nom. sing.) – bitter juice

Uncoordinated attributes are expressed by nouns in Genitive case singular and plural forms. They may be translated into English as uncoordinated and coordinated ones.

For example: **tinctura** (f., Nom. sing.) **Valerianae** (f., Gen. sing.) – tincture of valerian – the word **tinctura** is a core word and it is expressed by the noun in Nom. case, sing., the word **Valerianae** is an attribute and it is expressed by the noun in Gen. case. The names of medicinal plants, and names of drus are written with a capital letter. The form of uncoordinated attribute doesn't change, while the core word changes.

### **Model of declension of uncoordinated attribute.**

Case	<i>Singularis</i>	<i>Pluralis</i>
Nom.	bacca Schizandrae	baccæ Schizandrae
Gen.	baccæ Schizandrae	baccarum Schizandrae
Dat.	baccæ Schizandrae	baccis Schizandrae
Acc.	baccam Schizandrae	baccas Schizandrae
Abl.	bacca Schizandrae	baccis Schizandrae

## Prepositions with Accusativus and Ablativus

Prepositions are incapable of inflection. They always precede the word or words they control. Latin generally employs inflection to show the relation between words where English employs prepositions in Latin also. The use of prepositions is limited to two cases, the Accusative and the Ablative.

### Prepositions used with the Accusative are:

<b>ad</b>	to, up to, for	<b>ad partes duas</b> – up to two parts
<b>ante</b>	before	<b>ante cibum</b> – before food (meals)
<b>contra</b>	against	<b>contra febrem</b> – against fever
<b>in</b>	into	<b>divide in pilulas duas</b> – divide into two pills
<b>per</b>	through, by	<b>per fistulam</b> – through a tube, <b>per diem</b> – the day (daily)
<b>post</b>	after	<b>post cibum</b> – after food (meals)

### Prepositions used with the Ablative are:

<b>cum</b>	with	<b>cum creta</b> – with chalk
<b>e</b> (if word beginning with a vowel) or <b>ex</b> (before a consonant)	from, out of, according to	<b>spiritus ex vino</b> – spirit of (from) wine
<b>in</b>	in, on	<b>in vitro nigro</b> – in black glass
<b>pro</b>	for, in proportion to	<b>pro oculo</b> – for the eye, <b>pro ratione aetatis</b> – in proportion to the age (the calculation of age)
<b>sine</b>	without	<b>sine ferro</b> – without iron

It will be noticed that the preposition **in** is used both with the Accusative and with the Ablative. There is a difference in meaning, however. When it is used with the Accusative there is a sense of motion expressed or implied, and the meaning is rather that of the English **into** than **in**. When it is used with the Ablative it follows a verb, expressed or implied, denoting rest rather than motion. The differens may be seen in the two English illustrations:

**The water is in the cup** (Abl.), **pour water in the cup** (Acc.)

**NB! Terms with prepositions:**

**Ad usum internum** – for internal use

**Ad usum externum** – for external use

**Contra tussim** – against cough

**Per os** – through mouth

**Cum herba** – with herb

**Pro roentgeno** – for X-ray

**In vivo** – in living organism

**In vitro nigro** – in dark bottle

**Sub linquam** – under tongue

**Divide in partes aequales** – divide in equal parts

**Conjunctions.**

Conjunctions are incapable of inflection.

There are two classes of conjunctions, coordinated and subordinated. A coordinated conjunction is one which connects two coordinate, or equal, words or phrases. Thus, **aqua et vinum** – water and wine, **misce et divide** – mix and divide.

The only two coordinated conjunctions in common use are: **et** – and, **vel** – or.

A subordinated conjunction is one which connects a dependent clause to an independent clause. Thus, **divide ut dictum** – divide as directed. Here, **ut** connects the

dependent verb **dictum** (**dictum est** – has been said) to the independent word **divide**. The only subordinated conjunction in common use is **ut**. **Ut** has two distinct meanings, **as**, and, **in order that**. When it means **as**, it denotes comparison, and is regularly followed by the indicative mood. When it means **in order that**, it denotes purpose, and is regularly followed by the subjunctive mood.

## Exercises

### 1. Determine the gender of the following nouns:

Globulus, Chamomilla, Alnus (tree), lagena, bacca, gutta, linimentum, amyllum, aqua, aerosolum, mixtura, Sambucus (bush), fungus, Amygdalus (tree), dragee, planta, chole, Calendula, Kalanchoe, Aloë, tinctura, bacca, glandula, charta, massa.

### 2. Determine the base and define the declension of the following nouns:

Glandula, ae f; gelatina, ae f; suppositirium, i n; remedium, i n; bacillus, i m; radix, icis f; cortex, icis m; spiritus, us m; animal, is n; liquor, oris m; Althaea, ae f; Aloë, es f; dies, ei f; fructus, us m; cornu, us n; Adonis, idis m; caput, itis n; lac, lactis n; semen, inis n; dosis, is f; nitras, atis m; phosphas, atis m.

### 3. Decline by cases in writing form:

Tinctura, ae f; gemma, ae f; herba, ae f; massa, ae f; mixtura, ae f.

### 4. Translate into English:

1. Divide materias.
2. Preparare tincturam.
3. Concide gemmas.
4. Sterilisate lagenam.
5. Exscicca herbam.
6. Addite aquam.
7. Terite camphoram.
8. Serva materias caute.
9. Infunde mixturam.

### 5. Translate from Enlish into Latin:

1. Prepare and give out tincture.
2. Sterilize the ampules.

3. Mix up substances.
4. Cool the water.
5. Form pills.
6. Strain (filter) mixture.
7. Cut the herb.

## **6. Translate from English into Latin.**

Into the bottle, against cough, for internal use, through mouth, for adults, for children, in living organism, with herb, without water, for a dose, for external use, for his (her) own (personal) use.

## **7. Decline by cases in singular and plural in writing form:**

Bud of birch, berry of sea buckthorn, gum of apricot.

## **8. Translate into English:**

1. Aquae; 2. Arnica; 3. capsulam; 4. pilulas; 5. tincturarum; 6. cera (Abl.); 7. guttis; 8. chartae (plur.)

## **9. Translate into Latin:**

1. Of arnica; 2. pills (Nom); 3. drops (Acc.); 4. by wax; 5. of waters; 6. with (cum) mirth; 7. with drops; 8. almond.

### *Control questions*

1. How can we define the gender of the noun?
2. What gender are Latin nouns with ending -a?
3. What is their ending in Gen. sing.?
4. How many declensions does Latin noun have?
5. What declension are they declined by?
6. What is the dictionary form of nouns?

## Vocabulary

**ad** – till  
**ana** – in  
**cera, ae f** – wax  
**charta, ae f** – paper  
**hora, ae f** – hour  
**massa pilularum** – pills mass  
**numero** – number  
**officina, ae f** – pharmacy  
**pasta, ae f** – paste  
**planta, ae f** – plant  
**vita, ae f** – life

**quantum satis** – it is necessary, in sufficient amount

**quantum sufficiat** – as much as suffices

*Names of plants :*

**Althaea, ae f** – althea, marsh-mallow  
**Aloë, es f** – aloë  
**Armeniaca, ae f** – apricot  
**Arnica, ae f** – arnica  
**Betula, ae f** – birch  
**Calendula, ae f** – calendula  
**Salvia, ae f** – sage  
**Schizandra, ae f** – schizandra  
**T tormentilla, ae f** – bloodroot  
**Urtica, ae f** – nettle

### Phrases with prepositions:

**ad usum internum** – for internal use

**ad usum externum** – for external use

**contra tussim** – for cough

**ex aqua** – out of water. In water

**in ampullis** – in ampules

**in capsulis** – in capsules

**in spritz-tubulis** – in syring-tubes

**in tabulettis** – in tablets

**in tabulettis obductis** – in coated tablets

**in vitro** – in bottle

**in vitro nigro** – in dark bottle

**in vivo** – on living organism

**per inhalationem** – for inhalation

**per os** – through mouth

**per rectum** – through rectum

**per se** – in natural

**pro auctore (pro me)** – for physician

**pro die** – daily dose

**pro infantibus** – for children

**pro injectionibus** – for injections

**pro suspensionibus** – for suspensions

**pro narcosi** – for anaesthesia

**pro oculis** – for eyes

**pro roentgeno** – for X-ray

**rhizoma cum radicibus** – rhizome with roots

#### **Phrases with verbs:**

**Da tales doses** – give out such doses

**Dentur tales doses** – lets such doses be given

**fiat, fiant (pl.)** – to make

**Misce fiat...** – mix to make

**Misce, fiat pulvis** – mix to make powder

# Unit 4

**Theme: The Verb. Praesens indicativi activi et passivi of verbs.**

**The verb "esse". Conjunctivus in prescriptions. Verb "fio, fieri".**

**Praesens Indicativi activi et passivi.**

Indicativus denotes the action without expressing the attitude to the information. It is formed by joining the base of the Present Tense and the endings of activi et passivi. In the verbs of I, II, III, IV conjugations the endings are added to the base. In verbs of the III conjugation the endings are added to the base with the help of the connective vowel "*i*" (it is changed into "*e*" before *-r*). In the 3-rd person plural the verb of III and IV conjugations have the connective vowel "*u*".

**Personal endings of verbs of the 3-rd person singular and plural:**

Person	Activum		Passivum	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
3 person	<i>-(i)t</i>	<i>-(ū)nt</i>	<i>-(i)tur</i>	<i>-(ū)ntur</i>

For example:

	Activum		Passivum	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
I	da-t	da-nt	da-tur	da-ntur
II	misce-t	misce-nt	misce-tur	misce-ntur
III	solv- <i>ī</i> -t	solv- <i>ū</i> -nt	solv- <i>ī</i> -tur	solv- <i>ū</i> -ntur
III	dilu- <i>ī</i> -t	dilu- <i>ū</i> -nt	dilu- <i>ī</i> -tur	dilu- <i>ū</i> -ntur
IV	fini-t	fini- <i>ū</i> -nt	fini-tur	fini- <i>ū</i> -ntur

### The Verb sum, esse - to be

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

- |                                |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <b>sum</b> – I am           | 1. <b>sumus</b> – we are  |
| 2. <b>es</b> – you are         | 2. <b>estis</b> – you are |
| 3. <b>est</b> – he, she, it is | 3. <b>sunt</b> – they are |

The auxiliary verb **to be** – **sum, esse** has independent meaning **to exist**, to be situated and may be a link verb in compound nominative or verbal predicate.

The Conjunctive forms are translated into English with the word combination “**let it be**” + **Participle II**:

<i>Imperative form</i>	<i>English equivalent</i>	<i>Conjunctive form</i>	<i>English equivalent</i>
<b>Adde</b>	Add	<b>Addātur</b>	Let it be added
<b>Da</b>	Give	<b>Detur</b> <b>Dentur tales doses</b>	Let it be given Let such doses be given
<b>Misce</b>	Mix	<b>Misceātur</b>	Let it be mixed
<b>Repēte</b>	Repeat	<b>Repetātur</b>	Let it be repeated
<b>Signa</b>	Write on the label	<b>Signētur</b>	Let it be labelled
<b>Sterilisa!</b>	Sterilize!	<b>Sterilisētur!</b>	Let it be sterilized!

One should remember that the Imperative form **Recipe** can never be replaced by the Conjunctive one. The use of the Conjunctive forms depends only on the physician writing a medical prescription.

### The Verb "fio, fieri" (to form, to make)

Person	<b>Conjunctivus</b>	
	<i>Singularis</i>	<i>Pluralis</i>
3	<b>fiat</b>	<b>fiant</b>

Naturally, in such a prescription the physician indicates some components to be mixed: **Misce** – **Mix**. He can also define more precisely for what purpose the mixture is necessary – that is for making some drug form. In this case, two forms are used: **fiat** (let

it be made) for the nouns in singular and **fiant** (let them be made) for the nouns in plural:

**Misce, fiat pulvis** – Mix to make a powder .

**Misce, fiant suppositoria vaginalia** – Mix to make vaginal suppositories.

One should remember that the Imperative form **Misce** is only used in the combination with the forms **fiat** and **fiant**.

**Misce fiat pasta** – mix to make paste.

**Misce, fiat pulvis** – mix to make powder.

**Misce, fiat unguentum** – mix to make ointment.

**Misce, fiat pilulae** – mix to make pills.

**Misce, fiat suppositorium** – mix to make suppository.

**Misce fiat linimentum** – mix to make liniment.

**Misce, fiant species** – mix to make herb collection.

### The word order in the Latin sentence.

The word order in the Latin sentence is free and depends mainly on logic stress of separate parts of the sentence. However, the following word order is generally accepted and often used:

1. The subject is on the first place.
2. The predicate is the last.
3. The secondary parts of the sentence are between the subject and the predicate.
4. As a rule, the attribute is after the defined word in the medical terminology.

Examples of the generally accepted word order:

1. *Inspiratio et exspiratio partes motus respirationis sunt.* – Inspiration and expiration are parts of respiratory motion.
2. *Chirurgus fracturam costarum curat.* – The surgeon treats the fracture of ribs.
3. *Bene cognoscitur, bene curatur.* – What is well recognised is treated well.

## **Exercises**

### **1. Translate into English:**

1. Calendula, Tormentilla et Gentiana herbae sunt.
2. Tinctura Valerianae pro aegrota praescribitur.
3. Sume guttas per horam.
4. Viola planta est.
5. Terebinthina in medicina adhibetur.
6. Gummi Armeniacae in aqua solvitur.
7. E planta Aloes extractum preparatur.

### **2. Translate the terms into Latin:**

Mix well; let a mixture be made; dispense in waxed papers; add water as much as may be necessary; add alcohol; let solution be made; rub well; let a mass be made; divide as directed; according to the manner prescribed; divide into pills.

### **3. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:**

Aerosol of ephatin; dry (liquid) extract of licorice; glyceric solution of ichthyol; oily solution of phytomenadion; pectoral species; tincture of strophanthus; sunflower oil for emulsion; suppositories with theophylline; sublingual tablets of glycin.

### **4. Form Praesens indicativi activi et passivi in the 3-rd person sing. of the verbs:**

Destillo, destillāre 1 – to distill; filtro, filtrāre 1 – to filtrate; misceo, miscēre 2 – to mix; divido, dividēre 3 – to divide; conspergo, conspergēre 3 – to powder; contineo, continēre 2 – to contain; sano, sanāre 1 – to treat; moveo, movēre 2 – to move; vivo, vivēre 3 – to live; extraho, extrahēre 3 – to extract.

### **5. Transalte into English:**

1. Misceatur. Detur. Signetur.
2. Mixture misceantur.
3. Repetantur medicamentum bis.
4. Misce, fiat suppositorium.
5. Herba Ephedrae exciccatur.
6. Massae pillularum quantum satis.
7. Dentur tales doses numero 20.
8. Misce, fiat pasta.
9. Tabulettae obductae.

## **6. Translate into English:**

1. Misce et adde aquam. 2. Misce et divide in pilulas. 3. Tere bene ut fiat unguentum. 4. Fiat pulvis et dividatur in capsulas N 20. 5. Dentur tales doses N 10. 6. Fiat guttae pro oculis. 7. Coque corticem cum aqua.

## **7. Translate orally from Latin into English:**

1. Cola mixturam per telam. 2. Praeparate tincturam ex herba Convallariae. 3. Sume tincturam Schizandrae ad hypotoniam. 4. Misce tincturam Valerianae cum Camphora. 5. Da membranulas in olla. 6. Forma pilulas e massa pilularum. 7. Exsiccate et concidite gemmas Betulae. 8. Sume tincturam Valerianae cum aqua. 9. Fiant chartae medicatae. 10. Fiat emulsum. 11. Consperge Glycyrrhiza.

## **8. Define the base and conjugation of verbs by imperative form:**

Dividěte, extenděte, servāte, cola, finīte, valēte, depurāte, salvēte, audi, sumīte, linīte, adhibe, forma, da, distillāte, contunděte, concidě, refrigerāte, exprimě.

### **Vocabulary**

#### **I**

**consto, āre 1** – to consist

**do, āre 1** – to give

**destillo, āre 1** – to distill

**decortico, āre 1** – to peel

**depuro, āre 1** – to purify

**dispenso, āre 1** – to dispense

**exsicco, āre 1** – to dry

**filtro, āre 1** – to filtrate

**rectifico, āre 1** – to distillate (brush by  
distillation)

**purifico, āre 1** – to purify (clean by  
liquids)

**pulvero, āre 1** – to pulverize

**precipito, āre 1** – to precipitate

**praeparo, āre 1** – to prepare

**sano, āre 1** – to treat

**steriliso, āre 1** – to sterilise

## II

**adhibeo, ēre 2** – to use, to employ

**habeo, ēre 2** – to have

**contineo, ēre 2** – to contain

**misceo, ēre 2** – to mix

## III

**addo, ēre 1** – to add

**diluo, ēre 3** – to dilute

**divido, ēre 3** – to divide

**concido, ēre 3** – to cut

**conspergo, ēre 3** – to powder

**coquo, ēre 3** – to boil

**extendo, ēre 3** – to spread, to plaster

**extraho, ēre 3** – to extract

**exprimo, ēre 3** – to squeeze, to press

**obduco, ēre 3** – to cover

**praescribo, ēre 3** – to prescribe

**repeto, ēre 3** – to repeat

**recipio, ēre 3** – to take

**tero, ēre 3** – to pound, to rub, to triturate

### Phrases with verbs:

**Divide in pilulas** – Divide into pills.

**Divide ut dictum** – Divide as directed.

**Mix and divide** – Misce et divide.

**Ex modo prescripto** – According to the manner prescribed.

## Unit 5

**Theme: Prescription. Parts of prescription. Grammatical structure of formation of prescription line. Simple and complex prescription. Some important rules for making up the Latin part of medical prescription.**

A medical prescription is a written order from a doctor to a chemist that includes instruction for preparing and dispensing medicines to a certain patient. The prescription can be written on special blanc.

A complete prescription consists of the following parts:

1. Inscription (**Inscriptio**).
2. Date (**Datum**).
3. Name of patient (**Nomen aegroti**).
4. Prescription (**Prescriptio**).
5. Subscription (**Subscriptio**).

### **1. Inscriptio.**

Here are written the name of the hospital, clinic or polyclinic, medical center, their address, and the date.

### **2. Datum.**

The date is important from the standpoint of ascertaining and determining the valid of prescription.

### **3. Nomen aegroti.**

Name, address and age of the patient. This part serves to identify for whom the prescription is intended. The full name and the address are required by law on all prescriptions for controlled substances. The age of the patient is a good additional piece of information, especially with pediatric patients where dosage calculations have to be double-checked for safety.

#### **4. Prescriptio.**

It is the main part of the medical prescription, because this is a doctor's order. It starts with a Latin word **Recipe:** (Take). The names of medicinal substances, the medicinal forms, and the dosage follow after it.

#### **5. Subscriptio.**

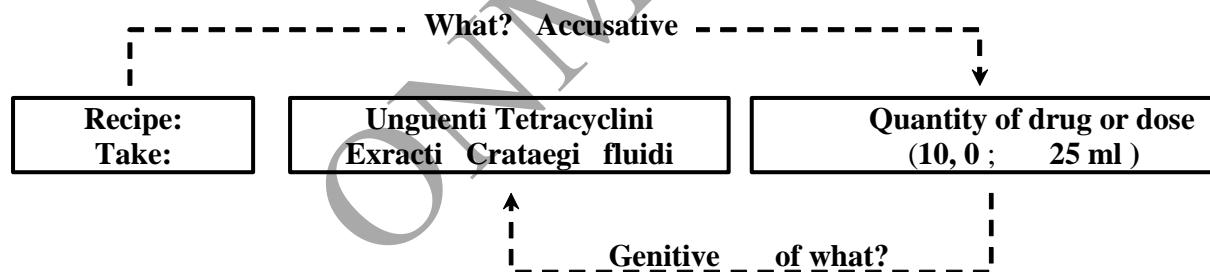
Instructions to the chemists on how to make the preparation and the number of doses, or medicinal forms to be supplied to the patient are given in this part.

Examples: Misce (Mix up); Da (give out); Misce, ut fiat unguentum (Mix, let ointment be made); Da tales doses numero 10 (Give such doses 10 in number).

The Latin part of a medical prescription begins with the Imperative form **Recipi:**

**Take:** This word is addressed to a pharmacist who has to prepare and to hand over a drug to a person.

If the drug is produced by a pharmaceutical plant, the prescription includes the name of this drug which is written after **Recipi:**



One should pay attention that both the drug form and the drug name after **Recipi** are in the Genitive form. This case form depends on the quantity of the drug administered mainly in gram amounts (indicated in decimal points without the abbreviation **gr.**) and milliliter amounts with the abbreviation **ml**.

**Recipi:** Unguenti Tetracyclini ophthalmici 10,0

**Take:** Ointment of ophthalmic tetracycline 10,0

**Recipi:** Extracti Crataegi fluidi 25 ml

**Take:** Liquid hawthorn extract 25 ml

After that in a new line two standard Imperative verb forms follow:

**Da (Give)** and **Signa (Denote)** so that the full prescription gets the following forms:

Recīpe: Unguenti Tetracyclīni 10

**Da. Signa:**

Take: Ointment of tetracycline 10, 0

**Give. Denote:**

Recīpe: Extracti Crataegi fluidi 25 m

**Da. Signa:**

Take: Liquid hawthorn extract 25 ml

**Give. Denote:**

Sometimes, the physician indicates in which form and in what amount the drug is to be given. In this case, he writes down these standard forms:

**Da (Dentur) tales doses numēro ... in tabulettis (ampullis, capsūlis etc) – Give**  
(Let be given) in such a dose amount... in tablets (ampoules, capsules etc.).

After the standard expression **Signa – Denote** – goes the signature where the physician indicates the way of using the drug in the patient's native language.

So – from **Recīpe** to **Signa** – that is how the Latin part of a simple prescription looks like.

**Some important rules for making up the Latin part of a medical prescription:**

1. Every new line begins with capital letter.
2. Every first letter of the next new line is written strictly under the first letter of the previous one.
3. If the prescription text is to be continued in the next line, the first letter in the next line should begin under the fourth letter of the previous one.
4. Any correction in the prescription text is forbidden.

## Complex medical prescription.

Sometimes the physician asks the pharmacist to prepare a drug in the pharmacy. In this case, he writes down all the components of this drug. Such a prescription is called a complex one.

Now, let us see some **complex medical** prescriptions with different standard phrases:

Recīpe: Sulfadimezīni

Take: Sulphadimezine

Streptocīdi

Streptocide

Synthomycīni ana 1,0

Synthomycin of each 1,0

Misce, fiat pulvis

Mix to make a powder

Detur Signētur:

Let it be given. Let it be labelled:

Recīpe: Euphyllīni

Take: Euphylline

Olei Cacao 2,0

Cocoa oil 2,0

Misce, fiat suppositorium

Mix to make a suppository

Da tales doses numēro 6

Give such a dose in the amount 6

Signa:

Denote:

### Some peculiarities of quantity expression in a medical prescription:

Sometimes, the amount of oils or other liquids can be indicated in drops. The number of drops is written in Roman figures. If one drop is indicated, so the Accusative singular form **guttam** is used, if more than one, the Accusative plural form **guttas** is used:

Recīpe: Olei Menthae piperītae **guttam I**      Take: Mint pepper oil I drop

Recīpe: Olei Eucalypti **guttas V**                  Take: Eucalypt oil V drops

In some cases, the physician doesn't indicate the dosage of a complex prescription component and let the pharmacist determine the quantity of this component on his own. In this case, the standard expression **quantum satis** – in sufficient amount – is used:

Recípe: Chinosōli 0,03	Take: Chinosol 0,03
Acidi borči 0,3	Boric acid 0,3
Tannini 0,06	Tannin 0,06
Olei Cacao quantum satis, fiat suppositorium vaginale	Cocoa oil in sufficient amount to make a vaginal suppository
Da tales doses numēro 6	Give such a dose in the amount 6
Signa:	Denote:

### Simple medical prescription.

Some pharmaceutical forms are used in a simple medical prescription. This is the way of prescribing tablets, drops, suppositories, ophthalmic films, sponges for different medical purposes, aerosols. The name of these pharmaceutical forms is written in the Accusative singular or plural. The Latin drug name in the Nominative form is sometimes enclosed in inverted commas or quotation marks, which are omitted in the English text, where in this case the common construction with preposition “of” is used. The amount of the prescribed drug is hereby not indicated in grams or in milliliters but is expressed by the word “**numērus**” (number) in the Ablative form (**numēro**) and a common figure. In the second line the standard verb forms are written:

Recípe: Tabulettas “Antistrumīnum”	Take: Tablets antistrumin
numēro 50	number 50
Detur.	Let it be given
Signetur:	Let it be labelled:

Recípe: Tabulettas Aloës	Take: Coated tablets of aloe
obductas 0,05 numēro 20	number 20
Da	Give.
Signa:	Denote:

## **Exercises**

### **1. Translate into Latin:**

Solution of dibazol for the injections; rhizome with the roots of valerian; suppository with dimedrol for children; pills for cough, solution of furacilin for internal use; solution of diprofillin in ampoules; solution of dimedrol in syringe-tubes; castor oil in capsules; castor oil in natural; ether for anesthesia; validol in pills; "Aevit" in capsules; tablets of amidopyrin and phenacetin 0,25 of each; powder of ampicillin for suspension.

### **2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from English into Latin:**

Anaesthesia for narcosis; camphoric spirit for triturating; eryhaem in phials; haemostatic plaster of feracryl; oily solution of synoestrol in the ampoules; testoenat for injections; tablets of pregoestrol; intranasal solution of thymogen.

### **3. Translate the prescriptions into Latin:**

1. Take: Coated tablets of valerian number 25

Give out.

Denote:

2. Take: Tincture of althea root 180 ml

Decoction of bark 10.0

Powder of foxglove leaves each of 15.0

Mix to make an ointment

Give out.

Denote:

3. Take: Syrup of cherri 60 ml

Distilled water up to 300,0

Mix. Give out in a dark bottle.

Denote:

4. Take: Bark of buckthorn

Leaves of nettle

Flowers of calendula each of 15.0

Mix up, let collection of dry plants be made

Give out. Denote:

5. Take: Eucalypt oil 20.0

Liquid paraffin 20.0

Let it be mixed and made solution.

Give out. Denote:

6. Take: Solution of haemophobin 5 ml

Give such a dose in the amount 10 in ampoules

Denoe:

7. Take: Tablets of sulfadimezin 0.5 number 12

Give out. Denote:

8. Take: Vaginal suppositories with synthomycin 0,15 number 10

Give out. Denote:

#### **4. Read aloud and translate the prescriptions into English:**

1. Recipe: Specierum antiasthmaticarum 50.0

Da in sacculo chartaceo

Signa:

2. Recipe: Radicum Taraxaci 200.0

Fructuum Juniperi

Radicum Stramonii

Fructuum Anethi ana 50.0

Misce, fiant species

Da. Signa:

3. Recipe: Herbae Adonis vernalis 8.0  
Foliorum Menthae piperitae 1.0  
Misce, ut fiant species  
Da tales doses numero 10 in sacculis chartaceis  
Signa:

***Control questions:***

1. With which word begins a medical prescription?
2. What is grammatical structure of prescription line?
3. What pharmaceutical forms are used in a simple medical prescription?
4. What is a complex medical prescription?

**MEMORIZE the following words and expressions used in prescriptions:**

1. **Acidum hydrochloricum dilutum** – diluted hydrochloric acid
2. **Camphora trita** – triturated camphor
3. **Consperge** – powder
4. **Decoctum foliorum Sambuci** – decoction of the elder leaves
5. **Extractum Frangulae** – extract of buckthorn
6. **Extractum Viburni fluidum** – liquid extract of guelder rose
7. **Extractum Crataegi siccum** – dry extract of hawthorn
8. **Herba Thymi** – mother-of thyme herb
9. **In capsulis amylaceis** – in starchy capsules
10. **In capsulis gelatinosis duris** – in solid gelatinous capsules
11. **Infusum foliorum Rhei** – infusion of rhubarb leaves

12. **In scatula** – in a box
13. **In tabulettis** – in tablets
14. **Massa pilularum** – mass of pills
15. **Oleum Terebinthinae rectificatum** – rectified turpentine
16. **Pro dosi** – for a dose
17. **Sacculus chartaceus** – paper filter bag
18. **Sirupus Cerasi** – cherry syrup
19. **Solve** – dissolve
20. **Species antiasthmatica**e – antiasthmatic species
21. **Statim** – immediately
22. **Tere** – triturate

### Vocabulary

**Aldehydum, i n** – aldehyde  
**caute** – cautiously  
**chartula, ae f** – small paper  
**Chloroformium, i n** – Chloroform  
**farina, ae f** – flour, meal  
**lagena, ae f** – bottle  
**liquor, ōris m** – liquor, solution  
**morbus, u m** – disease  
**omnis, e** – all, every  
**satis** – enough  
**solutio, ūnis f** – solution

### *Names of plants:*

**Thymus, i m** – thyme  
**Stramonium, i n** – stramonium  
**Taraxacum, i n** – dandelion  
**Juniperus, i f** – juniper  
**Anethum, i n** – dill

# Unit 6

**Theme: Nouns of the II declension. Peculiarities of declension of the neuter gender. Exceptions from the gender of nouns of the II declension.**

Nouns of the II declension end in **-us, er** or **-um**. Nouns of the second declension ending in **-us, er** are masculine; those ending in **-um** are neuter. They have the ending **-i** in Gen. sing.

Casus	<i>Singularis</i>		<i>Pluralis</i>	
	<b>m</b>	<b>n</b>	<b>m</b>	<b>n</b>
Nom.	-us, -er	-um	-i	-a
Gen.		-i		-orum
Dat.		-o		-is
Acc.		-um	-os	-a
Abl.		-o		-is

Example of declining of the noun of masculine gender II declension:

**calamus** – reed; stem is **calam-**

Casus	<i>Singularis</i>	<i>Pluralis</i>
Nom.	calamus	calami
Gen.	calami	calamorum
Dat.	calamo	calamis
Acc.	calatum	calamos
Abl.	calamo	calamis

Example of declining of the noun of neuter gender II declension:

**extractum** – extract; stem is **extract-**

Casus	<i>Singularis</i>	<i>Pluralis</i>
Nom.	extractum	extracta
Gen.	extracti	extractorum
Dat.	extracto	extractis
Acc.	extractum	extracta
Abl.	extracto	extractis

## **Exceptions from the gender of nouns of the II declension.**

There are nouns of the II declension with ending **-us** which belong to feminine gender:

### **1. Names of trees and bushes:**

For example: **Pinus, i f** – pine

**Eucaliptus, i f** – eucalyptus

**Crataegus, i f** – hawthorn

### **2. Nouns of Greek origin:**

For example: **bolus, i f** – clay, bolus (big pill)

**crystallus, i f** – crystal

## **Exercises**

### **1. Decline the following nouns:**

Sirupus, i m; oleum, i n; infusum, i n; globulus, i m;

### **2. Define the cases of nouns:**

1. Rubi; 2. opium; 3. syrpos; 3. emulsorum; 4. Phosphoro; 5. vinis; 6. emplastra;  
8. unguenta; 9. foliorum; 10. decocta; 11. remediis; 12. succos; 13. Absinthii;  
14. linimentum; 15. sacchari; 16. oleum; 17. infusis; 18. oculorum.

### **3. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:**

Extractum Absinthii fluīdum; linimentum Aloēs; rhizōma cum radicībus Valeriānae;  
sirūpus ex fructībus Cerasi; solutio «Tetrosterōnum» pro injectionībus; suppositoria  
vaginalia cum Synthomycīno; tabulettae Aspirīni obductae; tinctūra fructuum Rubi;  
unguentum Dibiomycīni ophthalmīcum.

#### **4. Translate into Latin:**

Herb of hawthorn; syrup of raspberry; herb of clary; ointment for eyes; olive oil; sunflower oil; leaves of pepper mint; suppositories with novocain; cocoa oil; syrup of rhubarb; extract of valerian; leaves of nettle; tincture of motherwort; flowers of matricary.

#### **5. Translate into Latin:**

1. Take: Vaginal suppositories with osarbon number 10

Give out. Denote.

2. Take: Tablets of furacillin 0,02

Give out. Denote.

3. Take: Dragée of diazolin 0,05

Give out such a dose in the amount 20

Denote:

4. Take: Ophthalmic films with Novocain number 8

Give out. Denote:

5. Take: Extract of Stramonium 10.0

Extract of Juniperus of each of 15.0

Mix to make a solution

Give out. Denote:

6. Take: Cocoa oil as much as it is sufficient

Powder of Opium 2.0

Mix, and let a suppository be made.

Give out.

Denote:

7. Take: Powder of leaves of Belladonna

Powder of leaves of Henbane

Powder of leaves of Stramonium of each in equal parts

Mix to make a powder.

Give out.

Denote:

8. Take: Bark of Buckthorn

Flowers of Calendula

Leaves of Peper Minth each of 15.0

Mix up, let collection of dry plants be made

Give out. Denote:

***Control questions:***

1. What nouns belong to the second declension?
2. What are their endings in Gen. sing.?
3. What exceptions from gender rules should be remembered?
4. What are the peculiarities of the neuter gender of II declension?

**MEMORIZE NAMES OF OILS:**

Oleum Amygdalarum – almond-oil

Oleum Cacao – cocoa butter

Oleum Camphorae – camphorated oil

Oleum Menthae piperitae – pepper mint oil

Oleum Olivarum – olive oil

Oleum Persicorum – peachy oil

Oleum Ricini – castor oil

Oleum Terebinthinae – turpentine oil

Oleum Helianthi – sunflower oil

## Vocabulary

**acetum, i n** – vinegar  
**aegrotus, i m** – sick  
**amylum, i n** – starch  
**antidotum, i n** – antidote  
**antidotum metallorum** – antidote by metal poisoning  
**bacillus, i m** – bacillus  
**decoctum, i n** – decoction  
**emplastrum, i n** – plaster  
**emulsum, i n** – emulsion  
**extractum, i n** – extract  
**folium, i n** – leaf  
**globulus, i n** – glob  
**infusum, i n** – infusion

**linimentum, i n** – liniment  
**medicamentum, i n** – medicament  
**oculentum, i n** – eye ointment  
**oculus, i m** – eye  
**oleum, i n** – oil  
**remedium, i n** – remedy  
**saccharum, i n** – sugar  
**strobilus, i m** – cone  
**suppositorium, i n** – suppository  
**unguentum, i n** – ointment  
**venenum, i n** – poison  
**vinum, i n** – wine

### *Names of plants:*

**Alnus, i f** – alder  
**Absinthium, i n** – wormwood  
**Cerasus, i f** – cherry-tree  
**Cerasum, i n** – cherry  
**Citrus, i m** – lemon  
**Crataegus, i f** – hawthorn  
**Gossypium, i n** – cotton

**Humulus lupulus, i m** – hop  
**Hyoscyamus, i m** – hyoscyamus  
**Juniperus, i f** – juniper  
**Prunus, i f** – plum-tree  
**Prunum, i n** – plum  
**Rubus, i f** – blackberry

# Unit 7

**Theme: Systematization and consolidation  
of grammatical models of terms.**

**1. Translate the following phrases from English into Latin:**

Tablets of analgin; tincture of belladonne; herb of lily of valley; water of pepper mint;  
berry of Buckthorn; ophthalmic drops; juice of Aloe.

**2. Translate the sentences into Latin:**

1. Mix. Give out. Denote.
2. Prepare a mixture.
3. Mint is a plant.
4. Let it be repeated.

**3. Translate the following phrases into English:**

1. Divide materias.
2. Addite aquam.
3. Terite Camphoram.

**4. Translate prescriptions into Latin:**

Take: Tincture of valerian 10 ml

Tincture of lily of valley 15 ml

Mix. Give out.

Denote:

Take: Dragee "Digestal" number 30

Suppositories with Ichthyol number 10

Give out. Denote:

## Unit 8

**Theme: Trivial names of medical substances.**

**Main stems in names of medicines of Greek-Latin origin.**

**Nomenclature of vitamins and preparations of combined multivitamins, hormone and enzyme preparations.**

In nomenclature of the medicinal preparations systematic names are not suitable as names of the medicinal substances. They are substituted for trivial ones, they are short, simple for professional and everyday use. Trivial names of medicinal substances are derivatives from different word-building structures. The bases for trivial names formation are the words, word-building elements and roots of Greek and Latin origin.

For example, the preparation made from the plant named **Papaver** (poppy) is called **Papaverinum**.

There are many word-building elements in pharmaceutical terms. They are mainly of Greek origin and give full information about medicine (chemical composition, origin, therapeutic effect).

Pharmaceutical terms are usually formed by combining stems with necessary meaning using connective vowel **-o-**, e.g. **Chinocidum** is made from the bark of **Cinchona tree**, **Chologonum** – medicine of choleric effect.

Terminological elements are components of complex term that have fixed meaning and form several terms with similar basic meaning. Names of preparations form the base of pharmaceutical terminology. These preparations can be of plant, animal or chemical origin. If the name of chemical composition is convenient to be used in the name of medicine, it stays the same. But usually medical preparations of chemical origin have two names: systematic and code name. Systematic name is based on scientific character and shows chemical structure of medical preparation. But it is difficult to use such name because of its size and shorter trivial name is used on its place.

If the trivial name is Latinized, it has ending **-um**. The most common suffixes to firm trivial names are: **-an-**, **-in-**, **-ol-**, **-id-**: Urosulfanum, Vasopressinum, Tocopherolum, Pyocidum. Such names are usually of neuter gender II declension.

Vitamins are named using capital letters of Latin alphabet (A, B, C, D, E, K, P) and if the vitamins of the same letter are of different types, they are signed by numbers (**B<sub>1</sub>**, **B<sub>2</sub>**). Medicines with different vitamins and other elements have the base **-vit-** (from **vita**, **ae f**) and numerals (that show amount of vitamin in medicine) in their names, e.g.: tabulattae “Heptavitum”, dragee “Undevitum”.

Pepsin and pancreatine are the most known enzymes of digestive system. **“Pepsinum”** is formed from “**pepto**” (digest), **“Pancreatinum”** from **pancreas**, **atis n** – pancreas.

Some names of enzymes medicines contain suffix **-(en)zym**, e.g. Enzystal, Lecozym.

Latin names of hormone medicines are mainly formed from the name of an organ that produces this hormone or an organ which is treated by this hormone, e.g. **Mammophysinum** (from “**mamma**” – mammary gland), **Thyreoidinum** (from “**glandula thyreoidea**” – thyroid gland), **Insulinum** (**insula** Langerhansi – area of an organ that produces this hormone).

### Frequent sections in the trivial names.

Abbreviations are formed by combination of frequent section of pharmaceutical terminological elements. They may reflect information of anatomical, physiological and therapeutic character. For example, terminological element **hydr-** (**water**) indicates the presence of **hydrogen** – **Hydrogenium**, **Hydrargyrum**.

It is necessary to memorize the most frequent word-building elements used in the pharmaceutical terminology.

**-aeth-** (aetyl) – Aetymorphin

**-chlor-** (green) – Chloroptic

**-phth-** (Phthorum) – Chlorophthalmum

**-io-** (Iodum) – Triiotorastum

**-merc-** (mercury) – Dimecaprolum

**glyc-** (sweet) – Corglyconum

**-cillinum** (antibiotics of penicillin group) – Penicillinum

**chol-** (bile) – Alacholum

**cardi-** (heart) – Cardiovalenum

**barb-** (barbituric acid) – Barbamylum

## MORPHOLOGICAL ROOTS

<i>Morphological root</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Latin example</i>	<i>English equivalent</i>
<b>-aesthes-, -aesth- -asthes- -esthes-</b>	correction of sensibility	Anaesthesia, i n Aesthesis, i n Bellesthesia, i n Paresthesia, i n	anaesthesia aesthesis bellesthesia paresthesia
<b>-(a)z-, -(a)zid-, -(a)zin-, -(a)zol-, -(a)zon-</b>	presence of nitrogen in the heterocyclic compounds	Azaleptin, i n Phthivazidum, i n Sulfapyridazinum, i n Norsulfazol, i n Sibazonum, i n	azaleptin phthivazid sulfapyridazin norsulfazol sibazon
<b>-benz-</b>	presence of benzene ring	Benzohexon, i n benzoic, a, um	benzohexon benzoic
<b>-cain-</b>	anesthetic effect	Novocainum, i n Ultracainum, i n	novocain ultracain
<b>-camph-</b>	influence on the central and peripheral nervous system	Bromcamphora, ae f Camphonium, i n	bromcamphora camphonium
<b>-cyan-</b>	cyanic acid, its anions or a cyan group	Cyanocobalamum, i n cyanidum, i n	cyanocobalamin cyanide
<b>-cyclin-</b>	antibiotics-tetracycline	Tetracyclinum, i n	tetracycline
<b>-cyclo-</b>	making an effect on the metabolic processes	Cycloserinum, i n	cycloserin

<b>-erythr-, -eryth-, -ery-</b>	1) containing erythromycin 2) produced from erythrocytes	Erythromycīnum, i n Eryhaemum, i n Erycyclīnum, i n	erythromycīn eryhaem erycyclin
<b>-haem-</b>	haemostatic or haematopoiesis stimulating effect	haemostatīcus, a, um Haemostimulīnum, i n	haemostatic haemostimulin
<b>-hydr-, -hyd-</b>	presence of hydrogen, water or a hydroxyl group	Hydrogenium, i n Formaldehydūm, i n	hydrogen formaldehyde
<b>-menth-</b>	product including mint	Menthōlum, i n	menthol
<b>-mycīn-</b>	antibiotics-streptomycin	Monomycīnum, i n	monomycin
<b>-myco-</b>	antimycotic, against fungi	Mycoseptīnum	mycoseptin
<b>-naphth-</b>	products of petroleum	Naphthalānum, i n Naphthyzīnum, i n	naphthalan naphthyzin
<b>-oestr-</b>	female genital hormones	Oestradiōlum, i n Synoestrōlum, i n	oestradiol synoestrol
<b>-oxy-</b>	presence of oxygen and its compounds	Chinoxydīnum, I n Oxylidīnum, i n	chinoxydin oxylidin
<b>-phtha(l)-</b>	derivatives of phthalic acid	Phthalazōlum, i n Phthazōlum, i n	phthalazol phthazol
<b>-phthor-</b>	presence of fluorine compounds	Phthorocortum, i n Phthoracizīnum, i n	phthoracizin phthorocort
<b>-pyr-</b>	influence on the body temperature	Antipyriūnum, i n	antipyrin
<b>-strept-</b>	different pharmaceutical effects	Streptocīdum, i n	streptocide
<b>-sulf-</b>	presence of sulphur or its derivatives	Norsulfazōlum, i n sulfas, ātis m	norsulphazol sulphate
<b>-test-</b>	male genital hormones	Medroestrōnum, i n Testosterōnum, i n	medrotestron testosteron
<b>-thi-</b>	presence of sulphur atom in the names of thiosalts and thioacids	Thiopentālum, i n thiosulfas, ātis m	thiopental thiosulphate

<b>-thym-</b>	immunity stimulators produced from thymus	Thymalīnum, i n Thymoptīnum, i n	thymalin thymoptin
<b>-thyro-</b>	correction of thyroid function	Thyroidīnum, i n Rifathyroīnum, i n	thyroidin rifathyroin
<b>-yl-</b>	presence of carbohydrogenic radicals	Benzylpenicillīnum, i n salicylīcus, a, um	benzylpenicillin salicylic

You should memorize prefixes of Greek origin used to construct a drug name:

<i>Prefix</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Latin example</i>	<i>English equivalent</i>
<b>a-,</b> <b>an-</b> (before a vowel)	denying, removing	Apressīnum, i n Analgīnum, i n	apressin analgin
<b>anti-</b>	acting against	antiasthmaticus, a, um	antiasthmatic
<b>hyper-</b>	increase, elevation	Hyperōlum, i n	hyperol
<b>hypo-</b>	decrease, lowering	Hypothiazīdum, i n	hypothiazid

## Exercises

### 1. Translate the terms into English:

Ampullae cum pulvēre Rifathyroīni; granūla Erycyclīni in capsūlis; injectiōnes Thymalīni pro adultis; lamellae ophthalmīcae cum Dicaīno; pulvis Dicaīni crystallisātus; solutio Pyromecaīni pro infusionībus intravenōsis; spongia haemostatīca in vitro nigro; suppositoria “Anaesthesōlum”; Thyreoidīnum in tabulettis.

### 2. Translate the terms into Latin:

Aerosol of ephatin; dry (liquid) extract of licorice; glyceric solution of ichthyoöl; oily solution of phytomenadion; pectoral species; tincture of strophanthus; sunflower oil for emulsion; suppositories with theophylline; sublingual tablets of glycine.

### **3. Translate prescriptions from English into Latin:**

1. Take: Coated tablets of bellasthesin number 25

Give out. Denote:

2. Take: Capsules of oestradiol 0,14

Give out. Denote:

3. Take: Thyreoidin 0,05 number 50 in tablets

Let it be given out of such a dose

Let it be labelled:

4. Take: Solution of synestrol 5 ml

Give out such a dose in the amount 10 in ampoules

Denote:

5. Take: Phthorocortum 0,1

Give out such a dose in the amount 20 in tablets

Denote:

6. Take: Vaginal suppositories with synthomycin 0,15 number 10

Give out. Denote:

7. Take: Hemostatic collagen sponge

Let it be given out of such a dose number 4 in plastic pacets

Let it be labelled:

### **4. Read aloud the names of the medicinal preparations and single out the frequent sections, TE and suffixes and explain their meaning:**

Valocardinum, Morphinum, Bicillinum, Amycasolum, Erythromycinum, Mycosolon, Paryngosept, Chlorophthalmicum, Methicilinum, Barbamylum, Panangin, Enteroseptolum, Gentamycinum, Synthomycinum, Phenobarbitalum, Glycerinum, Glucosum, Hydrocortisonum.

**5. Read aloud and translate into English:**

Solutio Strophantini; tabulettae Pradnisoloni; tabulettae Pantocrini; unguentum "Psoriasum"; solutio Camphorae oleosa; unguentum Tetracyclini ophthalmicum; linimentum "Sanitas"; tabulettae "Cholenzymum"; solutio Glucosi; tabulettae "Bellasthesinum"; suspensio "Cindolum"; emplastrum Euphyllini; Streptocidum soluble; species antiastmaticae.

**6. Write in Latin, single out the frequent sections and explain their meaning :**

Tetracycline, streptocide, apressin, phthivazid, thiopental, benzylpenicillin, bellasthesin, analgin, sibazon, thymalin, naphthalan, novocain, menthol, haemostimulin, medrotestron, formaldehyde, hypothiazid, naphthyzin, bromcamphora, testosterone.

*Control questions:*

1. What is formation of trivial names of the medical substances?
2. What declension are all Latin names of the medicinal preparations?
3. What Greek prefixes are used in the drug names?
4. What is the base in names of vitamins?
5. What is formation of hormones?

## Vocabulary

*Names of vitamins:*

<b>Acidum pangamicum</b>	(Vitaminum B12) – pangamic acid
<b>Acidum pantothenicum</b>	(Vitaminum B3) – pantothenic acid
<b>Acidum nicotinicum</b>	(Vitaminum B5) – nicotinic acid
<b>Acidum folicum</b>	(Vitaminum B6) – folic acid
<b>Calciferolum</b>	(Vitaminum D2) – calciferol
<b>Cholecalciferolum</b>	(Vitaminum D3) – cholecalciferol
<b>Cyanocobalaminum</b>	(Vitaminum B12) – cyancobalamine
<b>Ergocalciferolum</b>	(Vitaminum D2) – ergocalciferol
<b>Nicotinamidum</b>	(Vitaminum PP) – nicotinamide
<b>Pyrodoximum</b>	(Vitaminum B6) – pyroxide
<b>Retinolum</b>	(Vitaminum A) – retinol
<b>Vikasolum</b>	(Vitaminum K3) – vicasol

*Names of drugs:*

<b>Thyreoidinum, i n</b>	– thyreoidin
<b>Hydrocortisonum, i n</b>	– hydrocortizon
<b>Prednisolonum, i n</b>	– prednizolon
<b>Synoestrolum, i n</b>	– synestrol
<b>Methyoestradiolum, i n</b>	– methyoestradiol
<b>Aethinyloestradiolum, i n</b>	– aethynilestradiolum
<b>Progesteronum, i n</b>	– progesteron
<b>Praegoestrolum, i n</b>	– praegestrolum

# Unit 9

**Theme: Adjectives. Grammatical categories of the adjective.**

**Two groups of adjectives. Adjectives of the 1-st group.**

**Algorithm of coordination of adjectives with nouns.**

The adjectives are declined like nouns. They are divided according to their declension into two groups:

**1.** Adjectives which have three gender endings belong to the **1-st group**; masculine form has the ending **-us, -er**, feminine **-a**, neutral **-um** and decline by I and II declensions.

Dictionary form of adjectives consists of the form of masculine gender, then ending of the feminine gender and ending of the neuter gender.

For example: **albus, a, um** – white

**sinister, tra, trum** – left

**2.** Adjectives of the **2-nd group** have only two endings for gender, the masculine and feminine are identical, the neuter distinguished by a different form and declined by the III declension:

For example: **vernalis, e** – spring

**solubilis, e** – soluble

There are no adjectives of the fourth and fifth declensions.

The **stem** of adjectives should be determined by the feminine gender Nom. sing:

For example: **albus** (m), **alba** (f), **album** (n) – the base is **alb-**

**ruber**(m), **rubra** (f), **rubrum** (n) – the base is **rubr-**

All adjectives should be written down and learnt in the dictionary form.

## Adjectives of the I – II declensions (1-st group)

Adjectives which have three gender endings make up the 1st group: Masculine forms have the ending **-us** or **-er**, feminine — **-a**, neutral — **-um**:

Masculine	Feminine	Neutral
albus (white)	alba	album
liber (free)	libera	liberum
dexter (right)	dextra	dextrum

In the following table is shown an example of declension of the adjective of the 1-st group **flavus, a, um** – yellow

Case	Singularis			Pluralis		
	masc.	fem.	neutr.	masc.	fem.	neutr.
Nom.	flavus	flava	flavum	flavi	flavae	flava
Gen.	flavi	flavae	flavi	flavorum	flavarum	flavorum
Dat.	flavo	flavae	flavo	flavis	flavis	flavis
Acc.	flavum	flavam	flavum	flavos	flavas	flava
Abl.	flavo	flava	flavo	flavis	flavis	flavis

As to the adjectives with the masculine form **-er**, it is more convenient to determine their stem from the feminine Genitive form: **niger, gra, grum** – black

Case	Singularis			Pluralis		
	masc.	fem.	neutr.	masc.	fem.	neutr.
Nom.	niger	nigra	nigrum	nigri	nigrae	nigra
Gen.	nigri	nigrae	nigri	nigrorum	nigrarum	nigrorum
Dat.	nigro	nigrae	nigro	nigris	nigris	nigris
Acc.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum	nigros	nigras	nigra
Abl.	nigro	nigra	nigro	nigris	nigris	nigris

## **Coordination of adjectives with nouns.**

To agree an adjective and a noun in Latin means to say or to write these parts of speech in the same gender, number and case. To do it you should:

- 1) write dictionary form of the noun and adjective;
- 2) correctly determine the gender, number and case of the noun;
- 3) place the noun on the first place of the term;
- 4) choose the correct grammar form of the adjective for this noun and put it on the second place (after the noun).

Let us take, e. g., the following term: **a dark bottle**.

First of all, let us write down the dictionary form of every word:

1. Dictionary form of the noun **vitrum, i n** (stem is **vitr-**, neuter, II decl.)
2. Dictionary form of adjective: **niger, a, um**. The form of neuter gender: **nigrum (stem is nigr-, II decl.)**
3. The form of the noun – **vitrum (Nom. sing.)**
4. The form of the adjective, coordinated with the noun : **nigrum (neuter gender)**

Now, let us make up the procedure of agreement, writing down the adjective after the noun, we get as a result the term: **vitrum nigrum**.

## **Main grammar models of pharmaceutical terms.**

In Latin there are three main models of building of the pharmaceutical terms:

### **I model**

**The noun (core word) + coordinated attribute (adjective)**

For example: **capsula gelatinosa** – gelatinous capsule

**tinctura amara** – bitter tincture

### **II model**

**The noun (core word) + uncoordinated attribute**

For example: **tinctura Belladonnae** – tincture of belladonna

**aqua Plumbi** – water of the lead

### **III model**

**The noun (core word) + uncoordinated attribute + coordinate attribute**

For example: **solutio Camphorae oleosa** – oily solution of camphora

## **Exercises**

### **1. Translate the terms from Latin into English:**

Formae remediorum fluidae; guttae ophthalmicae seu oculoguttae; tabulettae stomachicae; cera alba et flava; extractum Frangulae fluidum; tincturae spirituosae; Vaselinum purum; Betula alba; extractum Glycyrrhizae spissum; Amygdalus amara; Eucalyptus cinerea; extractum Rhei siccum; aqua Amygdalarum amararum.

### **2. Translate prescription from English into Latin:**

1. Take: Powder of eucalyptus gum

Powder of starch of each 3.0

Powder of foxglove leaves 15.0

Let a very fine powder be made

Give out.

Denote:

2. Take: Extract of belladonna 1.0

Oil of theobroma as much as may be sufficient

Mix to make suppositories

Give out.

Denote:

3. Take: Cocaine hydrochloride 10 ml

Distilled water 90 ml

Mix to make solution

Give in dark bottle

Denote:

4. Take: Bark of buckthorn

Leaves of nettle

Leaves of peper mint each of 15.0

Mix up, let collection of dry plants be made

Give out. Denote:

5. Take: Infusion of grass of motherwort 0.1:100 ml

Syrup of althaea 20 ml

Tincture of calendula 10 ml

Mix up. Give out. Denote:

### **3. Translate the terms into Latin:**

dry (liquid) extract of licorice; glyceric solution of ichthyol; sunflower oil for emulsion; sublingual tablets of glycine.

### **4. Translate the terms into Latin:**

liquid extract of belladonna; ether for anesthesia; herb of spring Adonis; liquid extract of hawthorn; medicinal tea for children; pepper mint leaves; ointment of mycoseptin; powder of foxglove leaves; root and rhizome of valerian; simple and compound powders; tablets of antipyrin; tincture of matricaria flowers.

### **5. Translate into English:**

liquor antisepticus; Acacia alba; aqua destillata; partes aequales; pulvis compositus; vinum rubrum; tinctura Opii camphorata; capsula gelatinosa.

### **6. Translate into Latin:**

mineral water; white wine; equal parts; purgative powder; concentrated extract of digitalis; equal parts of tincture of belladonna and elixir of iron; bitter wine; compound laxative pills; aromatic syrup.

**7. Provide the correct ending of the adjectives in the following phrases:**

- |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. aqua destillat...     | 10. adeps solid...       |
| 2. cera alb...           | 11. solutio conserva...  |
| 3. elixirium composit... | 12. vaselinum flav...    |
| 4. cera flav...          | 13. balsamum peruvian... |
| 5. extractum fluid...    | 14. solutio steril...    |
| 6. alcoholum dilut...    | 15. paraffinum solid...  |
| 7. vaselinum alb...      | 16. extractum sicc...    |
| 8. sirupus simpl...      | 17. paraffinum liquid... |
| 9. spiritus anisat...    | 18. solutio amar.....    |

*Control questions:*

1. What adjectives belong to the 1-st group?
2. By what declension are the adjectives of the 1-st group declined?
3. What adjectives belong to the 2-nd group?
4. By what declension are the adjectives of the 2-nd group declined?
5. What is coordination of adjectives with nouns?

## Vocabulary

**albus, a, um** – white

**aquosus, a, um** – watery

**adultus, a, um** – adult

**amylaceus, a, um** – starch

**amarus, a, um** – bitter

**causticus, a, um** – caustic

**coeruleus, a, um** – blue

**ceratus, a, um** – wax-coated, cerated

**cinereus, a, um** – grey

**externus, a, um** – external

**flavus, a, um** – yellow

**fluidus, a, um** – liquid

**fuscus, a, um** – dark

**gelatinosus, a, um** – gelatinous

**gastricus, a, um** – gastric

**internus, a, um** – internal

**niger, gra, grum** – black, dark

**nativus, a, um** – natural

**oleosus, a, um** – oily

**ophthalmicus, a, um** – ophthalmic

**purus, a, um** – clean

**siccus, a, um** – dry

**spissus, a, um** – thick

**solidus, a, um** – hard

**durus, a, um** – hard

# Unit 10

**Theme: Names creation of medical preparations according to the pharmacological influence.**

**Main suffixes of adjectives of the 1-st and 2-nd declensions.**

Groups of medicines according to their pharmacological effect are usually called substantial adjectives in the plural form of the neuter gender e.g.: **sedativa** – sedatives (their coordination with noun «remedia» – remedies);

**antiseptica** – antiseptics;

**cardiaca** – heart remedies .

Adjectives that characterize remedies according to their pharmacological effect are mainly formed by suffix-**ic**.

e.g.: **analget + ic + us, a, um** – painkiller.

**Main suffixes for adjectives of the I – II declensions:**

<i>Suffixes</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Examples</i>
<b>-at-</b>	which is based on something	ceratus, a, um – waxed
<b>-e-</b>	is formed from substance which is	chartaceus, a, um – papery
<b>-ace-</b>	used in the base	spirituosus, a, um – alcoholic
<b>-os-</b>		
<b>-id-</b>	indicates a physical feature or condition	fluidus, a, um – liquid
<b>-ic-</b>	indicates belonging to something	gastricus, a, um – gastric

*Control questions :*

1. What are suffixes of adjectives of the 1-st and 2-nd declension?
2. What are the meanings of suffixes?
3. What suffix indicates belonging to something?

## **Exercises**

### **1. Provide the correct ending of the adjectives in the phrases:**

- |                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. pasta hydrophilic...     | 7. paraffinum aromatic...  |
| 2. pulvis antidoloric...    | 8. sirupus laxa...         |
| 3. remedium adjuva...       | 9. digitus minim...        |
| 4. unguentum nasal...       | 10. emulsum antimycotic... |
| 5. emplastrum antiseptic... | 11. remedium cardinal...   |
| 6. species sedativ...       | 12. pars aequal...         |

### **2. Translate into English:**

Liquor antisepticus; amygdala amara; tabuletæ antipyreticae; guttae ophthalmicae; pillulae somniferae; balsamum antiphlogisticum; solution spirituosa; adeps solidus; extractum siccum; succus amarus; remedium internum; tinctura aromatica.

### **3. Translate the phrases from English into Latin:**

- |                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. yellow wax          | 11. ophthalmic drops |
| 2. equal part          | 12. white wax        |
| 3. anise spirit        | 13. compound elixir  |
| 4. distilled water     | 14. bitter syrup     |
| 5. simple syrup        | 15. papery box       |
| 6. laxative tablet     | 16. solid fat        |
| 7. yellow vaseline     | 17. diluted spirit   |
| 8. liquid paraffin     | 18. oily solution    |
| 9. anesthetic solution | 19. nose ointment    |
| 10. cooling cream      | 20. dry extract      |

#### **4. Read aloud and translate into English:**

Formae remediorum fluidae; cera alba et flava; species sedativae; Betula alba; solutio oleosa; tinctura pro dentibus; Haematogenum siccum in tabulettis; extractum Absinthii spissum; guttae ophthalmicae; decoctum cholagogum, extractum aquosum; tinctura Iodi decolorata; syrupus albus; capsula gelatinosa; decoctum Aloes compositum; remedia analgetica; tincturae sedativae; extractum Glycyrrhizae purum; species stomachicae; guttae ophthalmicae; mixtura laxativa; massa pillularum.

#### **5. Translate the terms into Latin:**

Dry haematogen in tablets; camphor oily solution; bitter tincture; viscous extract of wormwood; bitter water of almond; antiseptic biologic suppositories; sedative powders; antipyretic remedies; antiseptic Rose water; oily solution of Geranium; anti-inflammatory powder; bitter sedative syrup; laxative dry extract; pressed tablets of licorice; waxed paper.

#### **6. Translate into Latin:**

1. Take: Tincture of nux vomica 180 ml  
Compound tincture of gentian  
Powder of foxglove leaves each of 15.0  
Mix up. Give out.  
Denote:
2. Take: Suppositories with glycerin number 6  
Give out.  
Denote:
3. Take: Alumen 0,1  
Distilled water up to 20 ml  
Mix. Give out in a dark bottle.  
Denote:

4. Take: Syrup of citric acid 100 ml  
Infusion of bitter almond 30 ml  
Mix up. Give out.  
Denote:

## Vocabulary

**amarus, a, um** – bitter  
**anaestheticus, a, um** – anesthetic  
**androgenus, a, um** – androgenic  
**analgeticus, a, um** – painkiller  
**antiemeticus, a, um** – antiemetic  
**antiphlogisticus, a, um** – anti-inflammatory  
**antipyreticus, a, um** – antipyretic  
**antisепticus, a, um** – antisепtic  
**durus, a, um** – solid  
**hydrophilicus, a, um** – hydrophilic  
**hypnoticus, a, um** – slipping pill  
**laxativus, a, um** – laxative  
**oleosus, a, um** – oily  
**ophthalmicus, a, um** – ophthalmic  
**purus, a, um** – clean  
**sedativus, a, um** - sedative  
**siccus, a, um** – dry  
**spissus, a, um** – viscous, thick  
**solidus, a, um** – solid  
**spirituosus, a, um** – alcohol  
**vivus, a, um** – alive

# Unit 11

## **Theme: Past participle passive. Names of serum, vaccine and toxoids.**

Participles perform a double function: as a part of a verb and as an adjective. As an adjective, a participle limits the meaning of a noun. Accordingly, it is capable of inflection and obeys the same laws of agreement as adjectives. That is, a participle agrees with the noun in gender, number and case.

The past participle passive, invariably ends in **-tus** or **-sus**, and is declined like adjectives of the first and second declension.

For example: In the term – **massa dividenda**. Observe that the participle **dividenda** as an adjective agrees in gender, number and case with the noun **massa**.

In pharmaceutical Latin the most frequent use of participles is in their function of adjectives.

For example: **concidere** (to cut) – **concis-**(base of supine) – **concisus, a, um** (chopped)  
**purificare** (to clean) – **purificat-** (base of supine) – **purificatus, a, um** (cleaned).

**carbolisatus, a, um** – carbolised

**compressus, a, um** – compressed

**contussus, a, um** – bruised

**dividendus, a, um** – to be divided

**expressus, a, um** – expressed

**exciccatus, a, um** – dried

**formandus, a, um** – to be formed

**liquefactus, a, um** – liquefied

**pulveratus, a, um** – powdered

**rectificatus, a, um** – rectified

**servandus, a, um** – to be preserved

**utendus, a, um** – to be used

## The names of serums, vaccines, and toxoids.

**Serum** – the watery, colorless fluid of blood contains antibodies to specific antigens and can transfer immunity to humans or other animals by means of injections.

**Vaccine** – a suspension of attenuated or killed microorganisms administered for prevention amelioration, or treatment of infectious diseases.

**Toxoid** – a substance that has been treated to destroy its toxic properties but retains the capacity to stimulate production antitoxins, used in immunization.

Most of the names of serums, vaccines, and toxoids are formed by using coordinated attribute. Words "**serum, i n**" (serum), "**vaccinum, i n**" (the vaccine), "**anatoxinum, i n**" (toxoid), which are formed from the name of the infection, against which are directed the action of the drug are used at the first place. Such adjectives formed with the suffixes : **-ic, - os**;

For example :

**Serum antigangraenosum** – serum against gangrene.

**Serum antidiphthericum** – serum against diphtheria.

**Vaccinum antirabicum** – vaccine against rabies.

**Vaccinum gripposum** – influenza vaccine.

**Vaccinum pertussicum** – pertussis vaccine.

**Anatoxinum tetanicum** – toxoid tetanus.

There are next attributes in such names:

- For vaccines – *purification, concentration or condition* (purificatum, concentratum, vivum, siccum).
- For serums – *purification, concentration* (purificatum, concentratum).
- For toxoids – *purification and adsorbant* (purificatum, adsorptum).

For example:

- **serum antitetanicum** (purificatum, concentratum) – anti-tetanus serum (purified, concentrated);
- **vaccinum tularemicum vivum** – alive tularemia vaccine;

- **anatoxinum tetanicum** (purificatum, Aluminii hydroxydum adsorptum) – tetanus toxoid (purified, adsorbed in aluminium hydroxide).

Rarely they are translated using uncoordinated attribute:

**vaccinum Salmonellae typhi** – typhoid vaccine;

**Salmonellae typhi** – typhoid wand;

**vaccinum variolae** – smallpox vaccine (variola, ae, f - smallpox).

### ***Control questions:***

1. What endings has the past participle passive?
2. What is the agreement of participle with the noun?
3. What is the formation of names of serum, vaccine and toxoid?

### **Exercises**

#### **1. Provide the correct ending of the adjectives in the following phrases:**

- |                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. aqua sterilisat...             | 10. Magnesia ust...         |
| 2. pulvis crystallisat...         | 11. Succus express...       |
| 3. elixirum composit...           | 12. anatoxinum purificat... |
| 4. spiritus solut...              | 13. Tuberculinum dilut...   |
| 5. Zinc-insulinum crystallisat... | 14. folium concis...        |
| 6. emplastrum composit...         | 15. paraffinum solid...     |
| 7. herba exiccat...               | 16. vaccina activat...      |
| 8. vaccinum gonococcic...         | 17. paraffinum liquid...    |
| 9. serum concentrat...            | 18. herba concis.....       |

#### **2. Translate the following terms into English:**

Tabulettae extracti Valeriana; Zinc-insulinum crystallisatum; unguentum Hydrargyri concentratum; oleum camphoratum; anatoxinum tetanicum; Capsulae gelatinosae;

oleum Terebinthinae rectificatum; chole medicata conservata; tabulettae Raunatini obductae.

**3. Translate the following terms into Latin:**

serum against gangrene; live typhoid vaccyne; cleaned water; sterilized bottles; activated pertussis vaccine; acids concentrated and diluted; lead complex plaster; concentrated serum antitetanus; vaccine against rabies; burnt magnesium, serum against diphtheria, alive tularemia vaccine, influenza vaccine; coated tablets; complex powder; sterilized solution; diluted spirit; distilled water; compound syrup; concentrated extract; crystalized powder; bitter tincture; complex elixir; liquid paraffin; cleaned oil; dried alum; dried bark; pressed tablets of licorice.

**4. Translate prescriptions from English into Latin:**

1. Take: Peach oil 20 ml

Vinilin 1 ml

Mix up, let liniment be made.

Give out. Denote:

2. Take: Extract of the valerian 0,3

Tincture of the lavender 0,015

Tincture of pieplant 0,8

Mix, let tincture be made.

Give out. Denote:

3. Take: Pills of pananginum 0,02

Give out such doses number 10

Denote:

4. Take: Soluble streptocid 5,0

Solution of glucose10 % — 100 ml

Mix. Let it be sterilized!

Give out. Denote:

5. Take: Flowers of calendula

Leaves of nettle of each 10,0

Mix to make medicinal species

Give out. Denote:

6. Take: Xeroform

Castor oil of each 20 ml

Mix to make a liniment

Let it be given out.

Let it be labelled:

## Vocabulary

**activatus, a, um** – activated

**compositus, a, um** – complex

**concentratus, a, um** – concentrated

**concisus, a, um** – chopped, crushed

**crystallisatus, a, um** – crystalized

**decorticatus, a, um** – pilled from bark

**destillatus, a, um** – distillatory

**depuratus, a, um** – pilled

**purificatus, a, um** – cleaned

**rectificatus, a, um** – cleaned

**dilutus, a, um** – diluted

**divisus, a, um** – divided

**expressus, a, um** – pressed

**exsiccatus, a, um** – dried

**extensus, a, um** – plastered

**obductus, a, um** – coated

**operculatus, a, um** – closed by tap

**praecipitatus, a, um** – precipitate

**pulveratus, a, um** – powdery

**reductus, a, um** – renovated

**sterilisatus, a, um** – sterilized

**solutus, a, um** – soluble

**(con) tritus, a, um** – rubbed

**ustus, a, um** – burnt

# Unit 12

**Theme: The III declension of nouns.**

**Determination of gender, base and type of declension.**

**Nouns of the masculine gender of III declension.**

**Exceptiones from the rules of genders.**

Peculiarities of nouns of III declension:

There are nouns of three different genders in declension III and in Gen. sing. they have ending **-is**. Nouns of declension III may have different endings in Nom.sing.

Nouns of the masculine gender have next endings in Nom. sing: **-o,-or,-os,-er, -es (with different amount of syllables), -ex.**

Nouns of the feminine gender have next endings in Nom. sing.: **-do,-go,-io,-is, es, -as, -us,-s,-x,-ix,-ox,-ax,-ux.**

Nouns of the neuter gender have next endings in Nom. sing.: **-en,-ur,-us,-ma,-c,-e,-t, -al,-ar.**

Most of them change their base and it is determined in the form of Gen. sing.

For example: **pulvis** (powder) – **pulveris** (Gen. sing.) – **pulver-** (base).

Nouns of declension III are of different types: **vowel, consonant, mixed.** It is determined according to the ending in Nom. sing. Nouns of **consonant type** have different amount of syllables and the base ends with one consonant (**injectio, onis f** – injection). Nouns of neuter gender with endings **-e, -al, -ar** are of vowel type (**animal, alis n** – animal).

Nouns with different amount of syllables and two consonants at the end of the base and nouns with endings **-es, -is** with the same amount of syllables are of mixed type (**dens, dentis m** – tooth, **apis, apis f** – bee).

### Case endings of nouns of III declension

	<i>Singularis</i>			<i>Pluralis</i>		
	<b>m</b>	<b>f</b>	<b>n</b>	<b>m</b>	<b>f</b>	<b>n</b>
Nom.	<b>various</b>			<b>-es</b>	<b>-es</b>	<b>-a(-oa)</b>
Gen.	<b>-is</b>	<b>-is</b>	<b>-is</b>	<b>-um(-ium)</b>	<b>-um(-ium)</b>	<b>-um(-ium)</b>
Dat.	<b>-i</b>	<b>-i</b>	<b>-i</b>	<b>-ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
Acc.	<b>-em</b>	<b>-em</b>	=Nom	<b>-es</b>	<b>-es</b>	<b>-a(-ia)</b>
Abi.	<b>-e(i)</b>	<b>-e(i)</b>	<b>-e(i)</b>	<b>-ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

### The masculine gender in the third declension

#### in the Nominative and the Genitive.

All masculine names in the III declension may be grouped according to the following table:

<i>Nominative ending</i>	<i>Genitive ending</i>	<i>Examples</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
<b>-er</b>	<b>-ēris</b>	aether, aetheris m	aether
<b>-es</b>	<b>-itis</b>	stipes, stipitis m	stem
<b>-ex</b>	<b>-īcis</b>	cortex, īcis m	cortex, crust
<b>-o</b>	<b>-īnis</b>	homo, īnis m	man
<b>-or</b>	<b>-ōris</b>	liquor, liquoris m	liquor
<b>-os</b>	<b>-oris</b>	flos, floris m	flower

Nouns of the masculine gender of III declension in Nom. sing. have endings: **-o**, **-or**, **-os**, **ex**, **-er**, **-es** (with different amount of syllables). Each ending in Nom. sing has specific base.

For example:

**homo, hominis m** – person

**liquor, liquoris m** – liquid

**flos, floris m** – flower  
**cortex, corticis m** – bark  
**aether, aetheris m** – aether  
**stipes, stipitis m** – stem

#### EXCEPTIONS:

**os, oris n** – mouth  
**tuber, eris n** – tuber  
**Papaver, eris n** – poppy flower  
**Piper, eris n** – pepper  
**Polygonum hydropiper** – water papper.

Exception that is of the feminine gender: **Menyanthes, idis f.**

Declining of a noun of **consonant type**: cortex, icis m – bark

Casus	<i>Singularis</i>	<i>Pluralis</i>
Nom.	cortex	cortices
Gen.	<u>corticis</u>	corticum
Dat.	corticī	corticibus
Acc.	corticem	cortices
Abl.	cortice	corticibus

#### *Control questions :*

- 1.What are the peculiarities of nouns of III declension?
2. How to determine the base of nouns?
3. What are exceptions of masculine gender?
4. What types are nouns of III declension?

## **Exercises**

### **1. Decline word combinations:**

Flos flavus, pulvis antisepticus, homo sanus.

### **2. Define the base and declension of nouns:**

cortex, icis m; nitras, atis m; Ribes, is n; exemplar, aris n; radix, icis f; dens, ntis m; apis, is f; Arachis, idis f; liquor, oris m; sapo, onis m; cutis, is f; apex, icis m; solution, onis f; flos, floris m; semen, inis n; rhizoma, atis n; pulvis, eris m; pix, picis f; arsenas, atis m.

### **3. Translate to Latin:**

Natural gastric juice; green medicinal soap; liquid ammonia; absorbent carbon; ethylic ether; liquid extract of aloe; spirituous solution; flowers of matricary; bark of oak; crushed bark of buckthorn; simple syrup or sugar syrup.

### **4. Translate into Latin:**

1. Of syrup;
2. Plasters;
3. Syrups;
4. Emulsions;
5. Of liniments;
6. Add water;
7. Take squill and vinegar;
8. Through mouth;
9. Let myrrh be given;
10. Give hops;
11. Yellow cinchona bark;
12. Oil of orange peel;
13. green soap;
14. pure alcohol;
15. black pepper.
16. Orange peel.
17. Tar ointment.
18. Witch hazel bark.

### **5. Read aloud and translate into English:**

1. Pulvis aromaticus;
2. Pulvis subtilis;
3. Sapo mollis;
4. Aqua Menthae viridis;
5. Cortex Aurantii dulcis;
6. Tinctura saponis viridis composita;
7. Oleum Rosae, oleum volatile est;
8. Divide in partes equeales;
9. Pulvis Opii;
10. Pulvis pro dentibus;
11. Syrupus simplex;
12. Aqua fontis;

## **6. Translate into English:**

1. Linimentum Chloroformii compositum liquor spissus coloris flavi est, pro frictione adhibetur. 2. Tabulettae, dragee, pilulae formae remediorum sunt. 3. Pharmaceutae infusa, decocta, multas mixturas ex tempore in officinis praeparant. 4. Liquor Ammonii caustici (15ml), spiritus 90% (ad 100 ml) continentur. 5. Praeparata corticis Frangulae ut remedia laxativa in forma decoctorum, extractorum et pilularum adhibentur.

## **7. Translate prescriptions from English into Latin:**

1. Take: Ammonia-anise drops 50 ml

Syrup of althea 20 ml

Purified water to 200 ml

Mix. Give out. Denote:

2. Take: Cortex of althea

Cortex of licorice

Seed of flax of each 10,0

Leaves of eucalyptus 2,5

Mix to make species

Give out. Denote:

3. Take: Chloroform

Ethylic spirit 95% of each 20 ml

Ethylic ether 10 ml

Liquid ammonia 5 drops

Mix. Give out. Denote:

4. Take: Ichthyol 3,0

Vaseline up to 30,0

Mix to make an ointment

Give. Denote:

## Vocabulary

**aether, ēris m** – ether

**aēr, aeris m** – air

**auctor, ūris m** – author

**carbo, ūnis m** – coal (carbon)

**cortex, ūcis m** – bark

**flos, ūris m** – flower

**liquor, ūris m** – liquid

**odor, ūris m** – smell

**homo, ūnis m** – person

**sapo, ūnis m** – soap

**sapor, ūris m** – taste

**stipes, ūtis m** – stem

**pro auctore (pro me)** – for author (for me)

**Liquor Ammonii anisatus** – ammonia-anise drops

**Liquor Ammonii caustici** – liquid ammonia

**per os** – through mouth

**lege artis** – according to all rules

**adde aquam** – add water

**ante cibum** – before meals

**post cibum** – after meals

# Unit 13

## **Theme: Nouns of the feminine gender of the III declension. Exceptions from the rules of gender.**

The sign of the feminine gender of the III declension are characteristic endings in Nom. sing. **-do, -go, -io, -s, -x, -as, -ax, -ix, -is, -es.**

The definite ending in Nom. Sing corresponds to the definite character of the base.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Examples</i>
<b>-do</b>	<b>-inis</b>	Hirudo, hirudinis f – bloodsucker
<b>-go</b>	<b>-inis</b>	Plantago, Plantaginis f – plantain
<b>-io</b>	<b>-ōnis</b>	Injectio, injectiōnis f – injection
<b>-ns, -rs</b>	<b>-tis</b>	Pars, partis f – part
<b>-as</b>	<b>-ātis</b>	Sanitas, sanitatis f – health
<b>-us</b>	<b>-ūtis</b>	Salus, salūtis f – health
<b>-is</b>	<b>-īdis</b>	Thermopsis, Thermopsīdis f – thermopsis
<b>-is</b> <b>-es</b>	<b>-is</b>	Apis, apis f – bee
<b>-ax</b>	<b>-ācis</b>	Borax, Borācis f – borax
<b>-ux</b>	<b>-ūcīs</b>	Nux, nucis f – nut
<b>-ix</b>	<b>-īcīs</b>	Filix, īcīs – fern

### **Exceptions:**

#### 1.Nouns of the masculine gender:

**turio, ūnis m** – escape

**pulvis, ēris m** – powder

**adeps, adīpis m** – fat

(adeos suillus seu axungia porcina – lard)

## 2. Names of anions:

**sulfas, ātis m** – sulfate

**phosphas, ātis m** – phosphate

**nitris, ītis m** – nitrite

**nitras, ātis m** – nitrate

## 3. Nouns of neuter gender:

**Ribes, is n** – currant

**Echinopanax, ācis n** – aralia

### *Questions for self-control:*

1. What is the sign of the feminine gender?
2. What words are related to the exceptions?
3. How to form the Genitive case of the feminine gender of the 3-rd declension?
4. How to determine the base of nouns ?

### **Exercises**

#### **1. Translate into English:**

Extractum Leonūri fluīdum; linimentum Aloēs; rhizōma cum radicībus Valeriānae; sirūpus ex fructībus Rosae; solutio “Testosterōnum” pro injectionībus; suppositoria vaginalia cum Synthomycīno; tabuletæ Aspirīni obductae; tinctūra foliōrum Eucalypti; unguentum Dibiomycini ophthalmīcum.

#### **2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:**

Antiasthmatic species; coated tablets of tetracycline; decoction of oak bark; tincture of pepper mint; dry extract of belladonna; ether for anesthesia; herb of spring adonis; liquid extract of hawthorn; medicinal tea for children; mint pepper leaves; ointment of

mycoseptin; powder of foxglove leaves; root and rhizome of valerian; simple and compound powders; tablets of antipyrin; tincture of matricary flower.

### **3. Correct mistakes, if there are any:**

Aqua amarus; Nucis vomica; infusum Digitalis; pro dosis; extractum compositus; unguentum Pix liquida; mixtura pro febre; syrupus cortices Aurantii; mucilago Linum; Extractum foliorum Adonis; syrupus Ribes; extractum Berberis fluidus.

### **4. Translate into Latin:**

Sweet tincture; strong solution; light powder; equal parts; soft pills; green solution; white wine; volatile oil; antiseptic lotion; emulsion of foxglove; lemon juice; camphor water; liniment of soft soap; tincture of cudbear.

### **5. Translate prescriptions into English:**

1. Recipe: Solutionis Ichthyoli 10% in Glycerino 25ml

Da. Signa.

2. Recipe: Decocci radicum Valeriana 15.0 - 200 ml

Da. Signa.

3. Recipe: Tincturae Leonuri 15 ml

Tincturae Nucis vomicae 5 ml

Misce. Da.

4. Recipe: Liquoris Ammonii anisati 2 ml

Sirupi Althaeae 15.0

Misce. Da.

5. Recipe: Pulveris Glycyrrhizae compositi 50.0

Da. Signa.

## **6. Translate from English into Latin:**

1. Take: Solution of glucose 40%

Give out in ampules number 6

Denote:

2. Take: Tar of birch

Rubbed starch of each 3.0

Mix to make pills number 30

Give out. Denote:

3. Take: Infusion of roots of althea 1.0 – 100 ml

Ammonia-anise drops 1 ml

Mix. Give out.

Denote:

4. Take: Novocain 0.2

Water for injections 10 ml

Glucose in sufficient amount to make isotonic solution

Sterelise. Give out.

Denote:

5. Take: Solution of blue methylene 1% 100ml

Give out. Denote.

6. Take: Glycerine

Phenol of each 5.0

Vaseline 60.0

Mix to make ointment

Give out. Denote:

## Vocabulary:

**adeps, adipis** m – fat  
**Borax, acis** f – borax  
**cutis, is** f – skin  
**infans, ntis** m, f – child  
**inhalatio, onis** f – inhalation  
**injection, onis** f – injection  
**faex, faecis** f – yeast  
**frictio, onis** f – trituration  
**latitude, inis** f – wide, breadth  
**longitude, inis** f – length

**lotio, onis** f – lotion  
**mucilago, inis** f – mucous  
**nux, nucis** f – nut  
**pars, partis** f – part  
**pix, picis** f – pitch  
    **pix liquida** – tar  
**pulvis, eris** m – powder  
**radix, icis** f – root  
**solution, onis** f – solution

### *Names of plants:*

**Adonis, idis** m, f – adonis  
**Arachis, idis** f – peanut  
**Berberis, idis** f – barberry  
**Digitalis, is** f – foxglove  
**Filix, icis** f – fern  
**Mays, Maydis** f – maize

**Nux vomica** – emetic nut  
**Persio, onis** f – cudbear  
**Plantago, inis** f – plantain  
**Ribes, is** n – currant  
**Thermopsis, idis** f – thermopsis  
**Vitis idea, ae** – red bilberry

# Unit 14

## Theme: Nouns of the neuter gender of the III declension.

The sign of the neuter gender of the 3-rd declension are characteristic endings in Nom. sing.: **-en, -ur, -us, -ma, -e, -al, -ar, -l, -c, -t.**

The definite ending in Nom. sing. corresponds to the definite character of the base.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Exemples</i>
<b>-en</b>	<b>-inis</b>	Semen, seminis n – seed
<b>-ur</b>	<b>-ūris</b>	Sulfur, sulfūris n – sulfur
<b>-us</b>	<b>-ōris</b>	Tempus, tempōris n – time
<b>-ma</b>	<b>-ātis</b>	Stigma, stigmātis n – stigma
<b>-c</b>	<b>-tis</b>	Lac, lactis n – milk
<b>-t</b>	<b>-ītis</b>	Caput, capītis n – head
<b>-e</b>	<b>-is</b>	Secale, is n – rye
<b>-al</b>	<b>-ālis</b>	Animal, animālis n – animal
<b>-l</b>	<b>-lis</b>	Mel, melis n – honey
<b>-ar</b>	<b>-āris</b>	Nuphar, Nuphāris n – water lily

### *Questions for self-control:*

1. What is the sign of the neuter gender?
2. What words are related to the exceptions?
3. How to form the Genitive case of the neuter gender 3-rd declension?
4. How to determine the base of nouns?

## Exercises

**1. Define the base and declension of nouns:**

Liquor, ūris m; aether, ēris m; vas, vasis n; Sulphur, ūris n; auris, is f; Limon, ūnis f; pulvis, ēris m; sapo, ūnis m; albumen, īnis n; Berberis, īdis f; flos, floris m; os, oris n; Alumen, īnis n; semen, īnis n; elīxir, iris n; hirudo, īnis f; inhalatio, ūnis f.

**2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into English:**

Oleum jecoris Aselli; Emulsum olei Helianthi; Granūla Glycyrami; Oleum Theobromatis; Solutio Corglycōni in ampullis; aqua fontis; Suppositoria cum Euphyllīno; Semen Colchici; Theophyllīnum in tabulettis.

**3. Translate the terms into Latin:**

Aerosol of ephatin; dry extract of licorice; glyceric solution of ichthylol; oily solution of phytomenadion; pectoral species; tincture of strophanthus; sunflower oil for emulsion; suppositories with theophylline; sublingual tablets of gycin, cod liver oil.

**4. Translate the texts of medical prescriptions into Latin:**

1. Take: Tannin 5,0

Extract of Belladonnae 100

Theobrom oil in sufficient amount

Mix, let suppository be made

Give out. Denote:

2. Take: Theophylline 0,2

Cocoa oil 2,0

Mix to make a rectal suppository

Give out. Denote:

3. Take: Tincture of srophanthus 5 ml

Tincture of lily of the valley

Tincture of valerian of each 10 ml

Mix. Give out. Denote:

4. Take: Oily solution of nitroglycerin 1% – 0,0005

Give in such a dose amount 20 in capsules

Denote:

5. Take: Solution of glucose 0,05 % – 1 ml

Give in such a dose amount 10 in ampoules

Denote:

6. Take: Cod liver oil

Sunflower oil

Syrup of acacia of each 10,0

Mix to make an emulsion

Give out. Denote:

7. Take: Burnt alum

Sunflower oil of each 20 ml

Mix to make a liniment

Give out. Denote:

8. Take: Ichthyol 3,0

Vaseline up to 30,0

Mix to make an ointment

Give out. Denote:

## **5. Correct mistakes, if there are any:**

Extractum Colchici seminis fluidum; albumen purum; alumen ustus; semen bonum; alumen excicatus; tinctura herbarum; gargarisma antisepticus; Sulfur depuratus; syrupus simplex; elixir Nufaris; serum antidiphthericus; oleum optimum; remedium simplex; acidum fortis; mucilago Linum.

## Vocabulary

**albumen, īnis n** – albumen

**alumen, īnis n** – alum

**alumen ustum** – burnt alum

**caput, ītis n** – head

**cataplasma, atis n** – compress, pledget

**corpus, ūris n** – body

**corpus vitreum** – humor vitreous

**derma, ātis n** – skin

**elixir, īris n** – elixir

**gargarisma, ātis n** – gargle

**jecur, ūris n** – liver of sea fish

**oleum jecoris Aselli** – cod liver oil

**lac, lactis n** – milk

**saccharum lactis** – milk sugar, lactose

**mel, mellis n** – honey

**nomen, īnis n** – name

**rhizome, ātis n** – rhizome

**stigma, ātis n** – stigma

**semen, īnis n** – seed

**Sulfur, ūris n** – sulfur

**systema, ātis n** – system

*Names of plants:*

**Colchicum, i n** – colchicum

**Nufar, āris n** – water lily

**Secale, is n** – rye

**Theobroma, ātis n** – cocoa

# Unit 15

**Theme: Peculiarities of declension of Greek nouns with the same amount syllables of the feminine gender ending with -sis.**

To the III declension belong Greek equally compound nouns of feminine gender with ending **-sis**.

For example: **dosis, is f** – dose

**narcosis, is f** – narcose

They have peculiarities of declension:

Acc. sing.: **- im**

Abl. sing.: **- i**

Gen. plur.: **- ium**

For example: **pro dosi** – for dose

**pro narcosi** – for anaesthesia

<i>Casus</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	<b>dosis</b>	<b>doses</b>
Gen.	<b>dosis</b>	<b>dosim</b>
Dat.	<b>dosi</b>	<b>dosibus</b>
Acc.	<b>dosim</b>	<b>doses</b>
Abl.	<b>dosi</b>	<b>dosibus</b>

Same way of declension have Latin nouns with endings **-sis**:

**tussis, is f** – cough

**pertussis, is f** – whooping-cough

**febris, is f** – febris

## **Exercises**

### **1. Provide the correct ending in the following phrases:**

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. doses tal...        | 8. lotio ophthalmic... |
| 2. oleum volatil...    | 9. Albumen pur...      |
| 3. dosis maxim...      | 10. contra febr...     |
| 4. contra tuss...      | 11. partes equal...    |
| 5. cortex sicc...      | 12. syrupus simpl...   |
| 6. aqua fort...        | 13. dosis minim...     |
| 7. solutio composit... | 14. charta cerat...    |

### **2. Correct mistakes, if there are any:**

Dosis maxima; syrupus Aurantii cortices; contra tussis; extractum Hamamelis fluidus;  
Aether pro narcosi; pix liquida; tinctura Chamomillae spirituosus; aqua Rosae; charta  
medicate; contra febris; Paraffinum durum; oleum Betulae.

### **3. Translate the following terms into Latin:**

Antiseptic spray; emulsion of cod liver oil; drops for the eyes; rectal injection; cough  
syrup; morphine for anaesthesia; slipping tablets; emulsion of castor oil; granules of  
furazolidon for children; powder of foxglove leaves; hot milk; volatile oil of cinnamon;  
spirituous solution of iodine for internal use; fluid extract of white oak; weak mixture  
against febris; gentian elixir with iron; white powder of sulphadimidine; purified cotton;  
rectified oil of turpentine; infusion of cornflower; bolus of aloe; fluid extract of sage;  
ammoniated tincture of valerian; suppositories of glycerine; compound laxative pills;  
expressed oil of almond; liniment of turpentine; lower dose; mustard plaster; black  
pepper; solution of ammonium; pure alcohol; volatile oil.

### **4. Translate the medical prescriptions into Latin:**

1. Take: Tablets of aspyrin 0,5 number 20

Give out. Denote:

2. Take: Glycerin ointment 50,0

Give out. Denote:

3. Take: Oil of Wintergreen 6,0

Syrup of Acacia up to 50 ml

Distiled water 50 ml

Mix, let it solution will be made.

Give out. Denote:

4. Take: Purified sulphur

Peach oil

Cod liver oil of each 30.0

Sterelize! Give out.

Denote:

5. Take: Syrup of Citric acid 50 ml

Spring water up to 20 ml

Tincture of cudbear 20 ml

Mix. Give out.

Denote:

6. Take: Compound tincture of Gentian up to 50 ml

Solution of glucose 25 % – 450 ml

Mix, let a solution be made.

Give out. Denote:

7. Take: Menthol 0,1

Camphor oil 20.0

Vaseline 10,0

Mix to make an ointment

Give out. Denote:

8. Take: Dry extract of Ergot 5,0  
Wheat starch 25,0  
Ointment of naphthalan 45,0  
Mix to make a paste  
Give out. Denote:

9. Take: Resorcin 0,2  
Tincture of Cantharides 25 ml  
Diluted alcohol up to 50 ml  
Mix, let friction will be made  
Give out. Denote:

10. Take: Dry extract of belladonna  
Powder of rhubarb root 25,0 of each  
Mix to make a powder  
Give out such a dose  
Denote:

11. Take: Ammonia 90 ml  
Lemon oil  
Lavender oil of each 10,0  
Alcohol up to 50 ml  
Mix, let solution will be made.  
Give out. Denote:

*Questions for self-control:*

1. What is the sign of Greek nouns of III declension?
2. What gender have nouns of Greek origin with ending -sis?
3. What Latin nouns have same way of declining?

## Vocabulary

**Calomēlas, ānos n** – calomel

**charta Sināpis** – mustard plaster

**dosis, is f** – dose

**dosis maxima** – the highest dose

**dosis minima** – lower dose

**dosis therapeutica** – therapeutic dose

**dosis toxica** – toxic dose

**pro dosi** – single dose

**febris, is f** – fever

**contra febrim** – against fever

**lysis, is f** – resolution

**narcōsis, is f** – anaesthesia

**pro narcosi** – for anaesthesia

**pertussis, is f** – whooping cough

**contra pertussim** – against whooping cough

**Propōlis, is f** – propolis

**tussis, is f** – cough

**contra tussim** – against cough

**Sināpis, is f** – mustard

# Unit 16

**Theme: Systematization and consolidation  
of grammatical models of terms.**

**1. Translate the following words into Latin, write down dictionary form:**

- |           |          |              |
|-----------|----------|--------------|
| a) cortex | c) ether | e) soluble   |
| b) seeds  | d) bee   | f) distilled |

**2. Translate the prescription phrasess into Latin:**

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. through mouth | 3. for inhalation |
| 2. for a dos     | 4. for cough      |

**3. Translate prescriptions:**

1. Take: Cortex of althea

Cortex of licorice

Seed of flax of each 10,0

Leaves of eucalyptus 2,5

Mix to make species

Give out.

Denote:

2. Recipe: Solutionis Methyleni coerulei 1% – 100 ml

Da.

Signa:

**4. Translate into Latin:**

1. Oily solution of Nitroglycerin in capsuls;
2. Infusion of herb of Lily of the Valley;
3. Fresh juice of cranberry;
4. Spirituous solution;
5. Concentrated serum antitetanus.

# Unit 17

**Theme: Adjectives of the 3-rd declension.**

**Declension and coordination with nouns.**

**Main suffixes of adjectives of the III declension.**

According to their gender endings the adjectives of III declension are divided into 3 subgroups:

1. the adjectives with three endings: **-er** (for the masculine gender), **-is** (the ending of feminine gender), **-e** (the ending of neuter gender). In the dictionaries the adjectives with three endings are written in full form only for the masculine gender, then the endings of the feminine and neuter genders. The endings of feminine and the neutral forms are enlarged. It helps us determine, whether the vowel **-e** in the feminine and the neutral forms is lost or not.

For example:      m      f      n

silvester, tris, tre – forest

2. the second subgroup includes adjectives with two gender endings. Masculine and feminine forms have the common ending **-is**, neutral – the ending **-e**. In the dictionaries these adjectives are written in full form for the masculine and feminine gender and then the ending of the neuter gender.

For example:      m,f      n

vernalis, e – spring

3. The third subgroup is made up of adjectives with one ending, common for the three genders. The dictionary form of these adjectives includes the Nominative form and the Genitive ending. Their base is defined by the ending in Genitive case the same as with nouns.

For example:      m,f,n

simplex, icis – simplex

m,f,n

recens, ntis – fresh

## Stem

The stem of adjectives of three and two endings is determined by feminine gender form. The stem of adjectives of one ending is determined by Genitive case form.

For example: **silvester**, **tris**, **tre** – base: **silvestr-**

**vernalis, e** – base: **vernal-**

**simplex, icis** – base: **simplic-**

All adjectives of III declension are declined by **vowel type**.

Examples of declining of Nouns with Adjectives of III declension:

**solutio sterilis** – sterilized solution

	<i>Singularis</i>		<i>Pluralis</i>
Nom.	<b>solutio</b> sterilis	Nom.	<b>solutiones</b> steriles
Gen.	<b>solutionis</b> sterilis	Gen.	<b>solutionum</b> steriliū
Dat.	<b>solutioni</b> sterili	Dat.	<b>solutionibus</b> sterilibus
Acc.	<b>solutionem</b> sterilem	Acc.	<b>solutiones</b> steriles
Abl.	<b>solutione</b> sterili	Abl.	<b>solutionibus</b> sterilibus

**bacca silvestris** – wild berry

	<i>Singularis</i>		<i>Pluralis</i>
Nom.	<b>bacca</b> silvestris	Nom.	<b>baccae</b> silvestres
Gen.	<b>baccae</b> silvestris	Gen.	<b>baccarum</b> silvestriū
Dat.	<b>baccae</b> silvestri	Dat.	<b>baccis</b> silvestribus
Acc.	<b>baccam</b> silvestrem	Acc.	<b>baccas</b> silvestres
Abl.	<b>bacca</b> silvestri	Abl.	<b>baccis</b> silvestribus

## **suppositorium rectale – rectal suppository**

	<i>Singularis</i>		<i>Pluralis</i>
Nom.	<b>suppositorium rectale</b>	Nom.	<b>suppositoria rectalia</b>
Gen.	<b>suppositorii rectalis</b>	Gen.	<b>suppositoriorum rectalium</b>
Dat.	<b>suppositorio rectali</b>	Dat.	<b>suppositories rectalibus</b>
Acc.	<b>suppositorium rectale</b>	Acc.	<b>suppositoria rectalia</b>
Abl.	<b>suppositorio rectali</b>	Abl.	<b>suppositories rectalibus</b>

### **The main suffixes of the adjectives of the 3-rd declension**

**-al(is), -ar(is)-** are added to the base of the noun and form the adjectives of two endings, which indicate relation to the object, belonging.

For example: **medicinalis**, e – medical  
**muscularis**, e – muscular

The suffix **-ar(is)** is added to the base which ends in **-i**.

The suffixes **-bil-is, -il-is** are added to the verbal base of the Present Tense. They form adjectives denoting possibility, ability with the passive meaning.

For example: **solubilis**, e – soluble  
**sanabilis**, e – curable

### ***Questions for self-control:***

1. What adjectives are declined by III declension?
2. What groups are the adjectives of the III declension divided into?
3. Name the suffixes of the adjectives of the III declension.

## **Exercises**

### **1. Decline pharmaceutical terms:**

globulus vaginalis, tinctura simplex, linimentum volate.

### **2. Provide the correct ending of the adjectives in the following phrases:**

- |                          |                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. partes aequal...      | 7. tabulettæ obduct...     |
| 2. pulvis enterosobil... | 8. suppositorium rectal... |
| 3. aqua fort...          | 9. herba exciccat...       |
| 4. charta cerat...       | 10. elixir aromatic...     |
| 5. oleum express...      | 11. capsula amylac...      |
| 6. solutio steril...     | 12. extractum sicc...      |

### **3. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:**

brown pectoral syrup; aromatic pepsin; simple liniment of opium; tincture of pepper mint; fresh olive oil; medical aseptic water; herb of spring adonis; liquid extract of malt; enterosoluble capsules of pancreatin; mint pepper leaves; yolk of an egg; fresh juice of cherry; simple and compound powders; tablets of aspyrin; tincture of matricary flowers; camphorated brown plaster; vaginal suppositories.

### **4. Translate into English:**

Piper rubrum; suppositoria vaginalia; oleum vegetabile; succus Papaveris recens; pasta Zinci mitis; tinctura Zingiberis; adeps lanae; solutio Morphini sterilisata; Ferrum reductum; species pectorales; aqua Camphorae medicinalis; cortex Glycyrrhizae dulcis.

### **5. Translate the prescriptions from English into Latin:**

1. Take: Capsules of oestradiol 0,14 number 12

Give out. Write on the label:

2. Take: Solution of magnesium 5 ml

Give out such a dose in the amount 10 in ampoules

Write on the label:

3. Take: Ophthalmic films with neomycin number 8

Let it be given

Let it be labelled:

4. Take: Aerosol of camphomen

Give out such a dose in the amount 2

Write on the label:

5. Take: Anaestesin 2,5

Cocoa oil in sufficient amount to make a rectal suppository

Let it be given out.

Let it be labelled:

## Vocabulary

**aequalis, e** – equal

**enterosolubilis, e** – enterosoluble

**fortis, e** – strong

**injectabilis, e** – injectable

**intramuscularis, e** – intramuscular

**levis, e** – light

**medicinalis, e** – medical

**mitis, e** – mild

**naturalis, e** – natural

**officinalis, e** – medicinal

**paluster, tris tre** – uliginous

**pectoralis, e** – pectoral

**recens, ntis** – fresh

**rectalis, e** – rectal

**simplex, icis** – simple

**silvester, tris, tre** – forest

**solubilis, e** – soluble

**sterilis, e** – sterile, aseptic

**subtilis, e** – very fine

**tal, e** – such

**transdermalis, e** – transdermal

**vegetabilis, e** – vegetable

**vaginalis, e** – vaginal

**viridis, e** – green

**volatilis, e** – volatile

**vulgaris, e** – common

**Da tales doses numero...** Give out such doses number...

**Divide in partes aequales numero...** divide into equal parts number...

## Unit 18

### **Theme: Adjectives of the 3-rd declension in botanic names and names of medical substances. Pharmaceutical phrases.**

The botanical name of a plant consists of Latin words, denoting a generic names (the genus) and the specific epithet (usually two words):

For example: botanical name of sage (its common name) is **Salvia officinalis**,

and for chaste tree is **Vitex agnus-castus**.

<i>Generic name</i>	<b>Salvia</b>	<b>Vitex</b>
<i>Specific epithet</i>	<b>officinalis</b>	<b>agnus castus</b>
<i>Plant species</i>	<b>Salvia officinalis</b>	<b>Vitex agnus-castus</b>

Specific epithets display a similar variety and include:

- genuine Latin words e.g. descriptive (may convey some information about the plant): multiflorum (many-flowered), album (white); geographical: graecum (Greek);
- Greek origin;
- Latin words formed by analogy: Canadensis (Canadian);
- personal names and other sources.

Specific epithets may be either adjectives (and participles – parts of verbs that function as adjectives).

Specific epithets as adjectives usually must agree in gender with the generic names they qualify, for example:

**Humulus lupulus:** Humulus (masculine), lupulus (masculine);

**Salix alba:** Salix (feminine), alba (feminine);

**Viscum album:** Viscum (neuter), album (neuter);

**Rosmarinus officinalis:** Rosmarinus (masculine), officinalis (masculine);

**Calendula officinalis:** Calendula (feminine), officinalis (feminine);

**Taraxacum officinale:** Taraxacum (neuter), officinale (neuter).

Adjectives **communis**, **e** and **vulgaris**, **e** are used in plant names in sense of "ordinary". Adjective **communis**, **e** is rarely used:

For example: **Amygdalus communis**

**Juniperus communis**

**Ricinus communis**

Often in the meaning of "ordinary" is used the adjective **vulgaris**, **e**

For example: **Thymus vulgaris**

**Origanum vulgare**

### **Adjectives *fortis*, *e*; *mitis*, *e***

Many drugs are produced in doses of varying concentrations. In names of such drugs are used the special definitions: **fortis**, **e** – strong effect

**mitis**, **e** – weak effect

For example: **Sustac-forte** – sustac of strong effect

**Sustac-mite** – sustac of weak effect

### **Exercises**

#### **1. Translate the adjectives and coordinate with nouns.**

Cortex (siccus, a, um), semen (dulcis, e), sirupus (simplex, icis), aqua (destillatus, a, um), tinctura (spirituuosus, a, um), species (amarus, a, um).

#### **2. Translate orally from Latin into English:**

Convallaria majalis; Thymus vulgaris; Valeriana officinalis; Taraxacum officinale; Ricinus communis; Origanum vulgare; Juniperus communis; Berberis vulgaris; Salvia officinalis; Anisum vulgare; Amygdalus communis; Ledum palustre; Althaea officinalis; Foeniculum vulgare.

### **3. Translate from Latin into English:**

Dosis mitis; aqua Ammoniae fortis; aqua Amygdalae mitis; unguentum Hydrargyri oxidi flavi mitis; oleum Amygdalarum forte; oleum Sinapis volatile; aqua morphinata mitis; tabuletta Validoli sublingualis; emulsum seminum Amygdalae dulcis.

### **4. Translate from Latin into English:**

1. Mucilago seminum Lini ex 1 parte seminum Lini et 30 partibus aque ex tempore praeparatur.
2. Alcaloidum Strychninum e seminibus Strychni obtinetur.
3. Ergotaminum et Ergometrinum sunt alkaloida Secalis cornuti.
4. Oleum jecoris Aselli vitaminisatum in medicina adhibetur.
5. Suspensio "Novocindolum" remedium antisepticum est.

### **5. Translate the medical prescriptions into Latin:**

1. Take: Tincture chinense magnolia 50 ml  
Give out. Write on the label
2. Take: Decoction of sweet almond 200 ml  
Give out.  
Denote:
3. Take: Strong Bicillin 600 000  
Give out such a dose in the amount 10 in ampoules  
Write on the label:
4. Take: Infusion of fruits of ordinary fennel 10, 0 – 30 ml  
Give out.  
Denote:
5. Take: Liquid extract of uliginous rosemary 50 ml  
Give out.  
Denote:
6. Take: Vaginal suppositories "Contraceptin" number 10

Give out.

Denote:

7. Take: Tablets of strong Nitrong in the amount 2

Give out.

Denote:

***Questions for self-control:***

- 1.** What is the sign of adjectives of 3-rd declension?
- 2.** How to form Genitive case of adjectives of 3-rd declension?
- 3.** What is the meaning of adjectives *fortis,e* and *mitis,e*?

OnMedU

## Vocabulary

**arvensis, e** – field

**chinensis, e** – chinese

**communis, e** – common

**vulgaris, e** – ordinary, common

**dulcis, e** – sweet

**fortis, e** – strong (in action)

**majalis, e** – may

**mitis, e** – weak (in action)

**mollis, e** – soft

**officinalis, e** – medicinal, official

**peroralis, e** – oral

**pinguis, e** – fatty, adipose

**seminalis, e** – seminal

**sublingualis, e** – sublingual

**vernalis, e** – spring

**viridis, e** – green

**volatilis, e** – volatile

*Names of plants:*

**Amygdala, ae f** – almond (fruit)

**Amigdalus, i f** – almond (tree)

**Amygdalus communis** – almonds ordinary

**Amygdalus dulcis** – sweet almonds

**Berberis vulgaris** – barberry

**Origanum vulgare** – castor oil plant

**Taraxacum officinale** – medicinal dandelion

**Viola arvensis** – field violet

**Ledum palustre** – uliginous rosemary

# Unit 19

**Theme: Present participle active. Declension. Names of ingredients in complex prescription. Pharmaceutical phrases.**

The Participle is a non-finite form of the verb which has verbal, adjectival and adverbial properties.

Present participle active voice is a verbal form, which is formed by adding the ending **-ns** to the base of the verb (I – II conjugation), or **-ens** (III – IV conjugation).

Genitive case of present participle active voice has ending **-ntis**.

Example: **praeparare – praeparans, ntis** (preparing)

**dividere – dividens, entis** (dividing )

The present participle active and the adjectives of the III declension of one ending have same form for all three genders. The dictionary form consists of form Nominative case and ending of the Genitive case and modified part of the base.

The stem defined by form of Genitive case. The present participle conjugate by the III declension of the **vowel type**.

Example of declining of noun with participle:

**remedium constituens** – means forming

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	<b>remedium constituens</b>	<b>remedia constituentia</b>
Gen.	<b>remedii constituentis</b>	<b>remediorum constituentium</b>
Dat.	<b>remedio constituenti</b>	<b>remediis constituentibus</b>
Acc.	<b>remedium constituens</b>	<b>remedia constituentia</b>
Abl.	<b>remedio constituenti</b>	<b>remediis constituentibus</b>

## **Names of the ingredients in a complex prescription**

Complex prescription is an order that requires mixing of one or more ingredients (active medicaments) with one or more pharmaceutical necessities (vehicle, suspending agent). The physician selects the drug, doses, and pharmaceutical form that he/she

desires and the pharmacist prepares the medication accordingly. The name of each drug is placed on a separate line right under the preceding one.

The order of ingredients is as follows:

**Remedium cardinale (basis).** The basis is the principal drug and gives the prescription its chief action.

**Remedium adjuvans (adjuvant).** As the name suggests, the adjuvant is a drug that aids or increases the action of the principal ingredient.

**Remedium corrigens (corrective).** The corrective modifies or corrects undesirable effects of the basic or adjuvant.

**Remedium constituens (vehicle).** The vehicle is the agent used as solvent in the solution, to increase the size and volume, or to dilute the mixture. The most potent or principal drug is written first, the other ingredient second, and the vehicle last, as shown in the example.

Examples: Recipe: Natrii bromatis 6.0

– **Remedium basis**

Phenobarbitali 0.5

– **Remedium adjuvans**

Siripi Menthae 50.0

– **Remedium corrigens**

Aquae distillatae ad 200.0

– **Remedium constituens**

Misce, fiat mixtura

Da. Signa:

## NOTA BENE!

### Remember adjectives in *-ns* :

**absorbens** – absorbent;

**adjuvans** – helping;

**adstringens** – astringent;

**aperiens** – aperient, laxative;

**deliquescent**;

**demulcens** – demulcent

**detergens** – detergent, cleansing;

**dolens** – painful;

**effervescens** – effervescent;

**emollient** – emollient, softening;

**fervens** – hot;

**fumens** – fuming;

***laxans*** – laxative;

***recens*** – recent, fresh;

***potens*** – powerful;

***rubefaciens*** – blistering

## Exercises

### 1. Decline the therm:

Remedium adjuvans; remedium corrigens; remedium basis.

### 2. Translate into English:

Aqua bulliens; pars dolens; lotio emolliens; pulvis effervescens compositus; mixtura aperiens; remedium laxans; emulsum adstringens; tinctura herbarum recentium; alumen adstringens; Gossypium absorbens; lotio adstringens; aqua fervens; pulvis purgans; mixtura stimulans.

### 3. Correct mistakes, if there are any:

1. Pilulae laxans. 2. Gossypium absorbentis. 3. Remedia purgans. 4. Medicinae laxantes.
5. Alumen purus. 6. Syrupus simplex. 7. Mixtura aperiens. 8. Sodii phosphas effervescens. 9. Praeparatio anticoagulans. 10. Linimentum Hamamelis et Arnicae.

### 4. Write Nominative and Genetive singular in Latin:

Compound syrup; coated tablet of Valerian; Turpentine oil; medicinal dandelion; starch capsules; distilled water; compound liniment; aromatic pepsin; cod liver oil; fluid extract of sage; mixtura of eucalyptus; infusion of senna; peppermint water.

### 5. Translate the terms from English into Latin:

Fresh aloe juice, peroral medicines, spirituous solution, camphor oil, crushed bark of buckthorn, solution of glucose, dry extract of thermopsis, expectorant mixture, sterilized solution for injections, enteric-soluble tablets of glutaminic acid, soluble norsulphazol.

## **6. Translate the medical prescriptions from English into Latin:**

1. Take: Syrup of squill 180 ml

Compound mixture of Licorice 90 ml

Powder of foxglove leaves each of 15,0

Mix to make a mixture.

Give out.

Denote:

2. Take: Pepsin

Rhubarb

Magnesia of each 50,0

Mix. Divide in starch capsules

Give out. Denote:

3. Take: Aether for anesthesia 100 ml

Give out in dark bottle

Denote:

4. Take: Extract of leaves of beladonna

Ointment of boric acid

White Vaseline of each 100

Mix to make ointment.

Give out. Denote:

### *Questions for self-control:*

**1.** What is the formation of present participle active?

**2.** How can we define the stem?

**3.** What declension are the present participle of vowel type declined by?

## Vocabulary

**adjuvans, ntis** – adjuvant

**adstringens, ntis** – astringent

**anticoagulans, ntis** – anticoagulant

**basis, is f** – base

**bulliens, ntis** – boiling

**calefaciens, ntis** – warming

**corrigens, ntis** – remedial

**defendens, ntis** – defensive

**excitans, ntis** – excitant

**expectorans, ntis** – expectorant

**irritans, ntis** – irritating

**laxans, ntis** – laxative

**nutriens, ntis** – nutritious

**purgans, ntis** – purgative

**roborans, ntis** – strengthening

**stimulans, ntis** – stimulant

# Unit 20

**Theme: Chemical nomenclature. Names of chemical elements, acids, oxides, salts. Greek numerals prefixes in chemical nomenclature.**

Latin names of chemical elements are, as a rule, nouns of the second declension and of the neuter gender beginning always with a capital letter:

Aluminium, i n – aluminum

Ferrum, i n – iron

Zincum, i n – zinc

Nouns of two chemical elements are exception from this rule:

**Phosphorus, i m** – phosphorus

**Sulfur, ūris n** – sulfur

Some elements have double names:

fluorine – Fluōrum, i n = Phthorum, i n

magnesium – Magnium, i n = Magnesium, i n

The chemical element names of most common usage are in the table below:

<i>Latin names</i>	<i>Latin chemical symbols</i>	<i>English names</i>
<b>Aluminium, i n</b>	Al	aluminium
<b>Antimonium, i n (Stibium)</b>	Sb	antimony
<b>Argentum</b>	Ag	silver
<b>Arsenum, i n (Arsenicum)</b>	As	arsenic
<b>Aurum, i n</b>	Au	gold
<b>Barium, i n</b>	Ba	barium
<b>Bismūthum, i n</b>	Bi	bismuth
<b>Bromum, i n</b>	Br	bromine
<b>Cadmium, i n</b>	Cd	cadmium
<b>Calcium, i n</b>	Ca	calcium
<b>Carboneum, i n</b>	C	carbon

<b>Chlorum, i n</b>	Cl	chlorine
<b>Chromium, i n</b>	Cr	chromium
<b>Cuprum, i n</b>	Cu	copper
<b>Ferrum, i n</b>	Fe	iron
<b>Fluōrum, i n seu Phthorum, i n</b>	F	fluorine
<b>Hydrargyrum, i n</b>	Hg	mercury
<b>Hydrogenium, i n</b>	H	hydrogen
<b>Iōdum, i n</b>	I	iodine
<b>Kalium, i n</b>	K	potassium
<b>Lithium, i n</b>	Li	lithium
<b>Magnium, i n seu Magnesium, i n</b>	Mg	magnesium
<b>Mangānum, i n</b>	Mn	manganese
<b>Natrium, i n</b>	Na	sodium
<b>Nitrogenium, i n</b>	N	nitrogen
<b>Oxygenium, i n</b>	O	oxygen
<b>Plumbum, i n</b>	Pb	lead
<b>Phosphōrus, i m</b>	P	phosphorus
<b>Silicium, i n</b>	Sl	silicon
<b>Sulfur, uris n</b>	S	sulfur
<b>Zincum, i n</b>	Zn	zinc

### Latin names of acids.

Every Latin acid name consists of the noun **acīdum** (acid) and an adjective of the first group with the ending **-um** in accordance with the rules of grammar agreement.

**acīdum, i n** – acid

**borīcus, a, um** – boric

boric acid – **Acīdum borīcum**

When an acid contains the greatest amount of oxygen, the suffix **-ic-** and the ending **-um** are added to the stem of a chemical element. English equivalents of these Latin adjectives have the suffix **-ic** as a final element:

sulfuric acid – **Acidum sulfuricum**

The same way of acid names building is used when names of organic acids are formed:

lactic acid – **Acidum lacticum**

When the acid of the same element contains lesser amount of oxygen, the suffix **-os-** is used. In this case English equivalents have the ending **-ous**:

sulfurous acid – **Acidum sulfurosum**

In the third variant, when an acid doesn't contain oxygen, the prefix **hydro-** and the suffix **-ic-** are added to the stem:

hydrosulfuric acid – **Acidum hydrosulfuricum.**

### **Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides.**

Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides consist of two words. The first one is always the Genitive form of a chemical element, then the Nominative form **oxýdum** (**hydroxýdum**, **peroxýdum**) follows:

zinc oxide – **Zinci oxýdum**

aluminum hydroxide – **Aluminii hydroxýdum**

hydrogen peroxide – **Hydrogenii peroxýdum**

The names **oxýdum**, **hydroxýdum**, **peroxýdum** are nouns of the neutral gender of the second declension:

**oxýdum, i n**

**hydroxýdum, i n**

**peroxýdum, i n**

## **Exercises**

### **1. Read aloud and translate into English:**

Acidum arsenicōsum anhydričum; Acidum ascorbinīcum in dragées; acidum sulphuricum; Acidum nitricum dilutum; aqua Ammonii; tinctura Iodi decolorata; pulvis Magnesii oxýdi; sirūpus Aloës cum Ferro; Sulfacȳlum solubile pro injectionībus; suspensio Hydrocortisōni; tabulettae Acidi folīci; tabulettae Acidi acetysalicylīci enterosolubīles.

### **2. Correct mistakes, if there are any:**

Cuprum oxidum; Ferrum hydroxidum; Corrosivum acidum nitricum; Acidum hydrochlorici concentrati; Sodi Hydroxidum; Flavi Oxidum Hydrargyry; Hydrogenii oxydum; Acidum hydrocyanicus dilutus; Oxidum Argenti; Plumbi Oxidus rubrus.

### **3. Translate into Latin:**

Nitric acid; coated tablets of glutaminic acid; clear hydrochloric acid; diluted solution of hydrogen peroxide; hydrochloric acid; granules of furazolidon for children; powder of foxglove leaves; solution of nicotinic acid; solution of soluthizon for intratracheal injection; spirituous solution of iodine for internal use; suspension of aluminium hydroxide; tablets of lipoic acid; thioacetazon in tablets; white powder of sulphadimidine; mixtura of iron composite; carbolic acid; yellow mercury oxide; pure carbolic acid; tincture of Lavender; precipitated oxide of manganese; deodorized opium; compound infusion of Senna; potassium hydroxide; fluid extract of ergot; bitter wine of iron.

### **3. Translate the prescriptions into Latin:**

1. Take: Solution of arsenous acid 30,0

Diluted hydrochloric acid 20,0

Compound tincture of Gentian up to 40,0

Let solution be made

Let it be given out

Let it be denoted:

2. Take: Naphthalan ointment 50,0

Let it be given out

Let it be denoted:

3. Take: Clear hydrochloric acid 6,0

Distilled water up to 100 ml

Let it be mixed

Let it be given out

Let it be denoted:

4. Take: Purified sulphur

Peach oil of each 30,0

Mix up. Sterilize!

Give out. Denote:

5. Take: Glutaminic acid 1,5

Solution of glucose 25 % – 450 ml

Mix up. Give out. Denote:

6. Take: Ascorbic acid 0,2

Nicotinic acid

Riboflavin of each 0,25

Distilled water up to 100 ml

Let it be mixed. Let it be given.

Let it be labelled:

7. Take: Yellow hydrogen oxide 0,6

Ichthyol 0,8

Zinc ointment 20,0

Mix to make a paste

Give out. Denote:

8. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,015

Powder of rhubarb root

Magnesium oxide of each 0,3

Mix to make a powder

Give such a dose in the amount 10

Denote:

## Vocabulary

### *Names of acids*

<b>acidum aceticum</b>	—	acetic acid
<b>ac. acetylsalicylicum</b>	—	acetylsalicylic acid
<b>ac. arsenicum</b>	—	arsenic acid
<b>ac. arcenicosum</b>	—	arsenious acid
<b>ac. ascorbinicum</b>	—	ascorbic acid
<b>ac. benzoicum</b>	—	benzoic acid
<b>ac. boricum</b>	—	boric acid
<b>ac. carbonicum</b>	—	carbonic acid
<b>ac. citricum</b>	—	citric acid
<b>ac. folicum</b>	—	folic acid
<b>ac. formicum</b>	—	formic acid
<b>ac. hydrochloricum</b>	—	hydrochloric acid
<b>ac. hydrocyanicum</b>	—	hydrocyanic acid
<b>ac. hydrosulfuricum</b>	—	hydrogen sulfide acid
<b>ac. lacticum</b>	—	lactic acid
<b>ac. nicotinicum</b>	—	nicotinic acid
<b>ac. nitricum</b>	—	nitric acid
<b>ac. nitrosum</b>	—	nitrous acid
<b>ac. oxalicum</b>	—	oxalic acid
<b>ac. phosphoricum</b>	—	phosphoric acid

<b>ac. salicylicum</b>	–	salicylic acid
<b>ac. sulfuricum</b>	–	sulfuric acid
<b>ac. sulfurosum</b>	–	sulphurous acid
<b>ac. tartaricum</b>	–	wine acid

*Names of medicines*

**Camphora, ae f** – camphor

**Glucosum, i n** – glucose

**oleum Helianthi** – sunflower oil

**oleum Olivarum** – olive oil

**Platiphyllum, i n** – platifillin

**Rutinum, i n** – rutine

**Strychninum, i n** – strychnine

**Synoestrolum, i n** – sinestrol

**Theophyllinum, i n** – theophylline

**Thiaminum, i n** – thiamine

**Vinylinum, i n** – vinylin

**Riboflavinum, i n** – riboflavin

**Ammonium, i n** – ammonium

**Vinum, i n** – vine

*Adjectives*

**depuratus, a, um** – purified

**deodoratus, a, um** – deodorized

**intratrachealis, e** – intratracheal

# Unit 21

**Theme: Names of salts. Names of acid and hydrocarbon radicals.  
Names of ethers.**

Latin names of salts consist of two parts. First goes the Genitive case of a cation (a chemical element name), in the second place is the Nominative of an anion. Anion names are always written with a small letter. If we speak of anions derivatives of acids containing oxygen of different degrees, two variants of these anions are distinguished:

1. Names of anions containing the greatest amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the endings **-as** in the Nominative and **-atis** in the Genitive singular:

**Natrii sulfas** – sulfas, **atis** m

**Natrii nitras** – nitras, atis m

So, one can very easily find out the correlation between English and Latin anion names of the first group: the English ending **-ate** corresponds to the Latin ending **-as**. In this way we may instantly determine Latin equivalents of English anions without analyzing their chemical composition, including all the anions of organic acids having the ending **-ate** too:

sodium salicylate – **Natrii salicylas**

testosterone propionate – **Testosteroni propionas**

2. The names of anions containing lesser amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the endings **-is** in the Nominative and **-itis** in the Genitive singular:

**Natrii sulfis** – sulfis, **itis** m – sulfite

**Natrii nitris** – nitris, **itis** m – nitrite

As you can see, the Latin anion ending **-is** corresponds to the English anion ending **-ite**, and it allows, as it is seen above, to determine any necessary equivalent taking as well into consideration the spelling of each separate word.

3. The names of anions which don't contain oxygen are neutral nouns of the second declension with the suffix -id- and the ending -um:

**Natrii sulfidum** – **sulfidum, i n** – sodium sulfide

**Natrii chloridum** – **chloridum, i n** – sodium chloride

So, the complex ending **-idum** of the Latin anions which don't contain oxygen corresponds to the English ending **-ide** in the anions with the similar chemical compound.

**Conclusion:** if you remember the endings of the three seen above variants of Latin anions and if you know which Latin anion ending corresponds to the English one, you do not need to know the chemical compound of any salt to express correctly both English and Latin salt name.

### **Anion names of basic salts.**

Latin anion names of basic salts are formed by adding the prefix **sub-:**

**Bismūthi subnītras** – basic nitrate of bismuth

**Aluminii subacētas** – basic acetate of aluminium

### **Two-component names of potassium and sodium salts**

Two-component Latin names of potassium and sodium salts are written with a hyphen. Each component of such a name is a neutral noun of the second declension. The second component following the hyphen is written with a small letter. In the dictionary form, after the two-component Nominative cases the ending -i and the gender sign n follow. English equivalents of these terms are written without a hyphen:

**Sulfacylum-natrium, i n** – sulphacyl sodium

**Benzylpenicillīnum- kalium, i n** – benzylpenicillin potassium

## **Exercise**

### **1. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:**

Kalii nitras; Kalii nitris; Natrii bensoas; Bismuthi subnitras; Barii sulfas; Lithii carbonas; Ferri citras; Morphini acetas; Natrii arsenas; Argenti nitras; syrupus Ferri; oleum Lini; unguentum Hydrargyri nitratis; Ammonii bensoas; acidum carbolicum liquefactum; unguentum Zinci stearatis.

### **2. Translate, write Nominative and Genitive singular:**

Potassium chloride; carbonate of iron; zinc carbonate; potassium tartrate; sodium carbonate; ammonium citrate; sodium sulfite; pilocarpine nitrate; silver nitrate; sodium nitrite; phosphate of iron; sulphate of iron; codeine phosphate.

### **3. Translate aloud from Latin into English:**

Aether stabilisātus pro narcosi; Barii sulfas pro rentgeno; Cerebrolysīnum in ampullis ad usum parenterālem; emulsum Benzylli benzoātis medicinālis; granūla Aethazōli-natrii pro infantībus; membranūlae ophthalmīcae cum Atropīni sulfāte; Methylēnum coeruleum in capsūlis; Phenylli salicylas in tabulettis; pulvis Phenoxyethylpenicillīni pro suspensiōne; solutio Aethacridīni lactātis spirituōsa; species polyvitaminōsae et pectorāles; tabulettae Calcii orotātis; Theobrominum-natrium cum Natrii salicylātē; spirītus aethylicus rectificātus; vitamīnum B<sub>6</sub> seu Pyridoxini hydrochlorīdum.

### **4. Translate from English into Latin:**

basic acetate of lead; basic nitrate of lead with belladonna extract; coated tablets of tetracycline hydrochloride; hypertonic solution of sodium chloride; isotonic solution of sodium chloride; morpholong for intramuscular injections; ointment of copper citrate; ophthalmic films with fibrinolysin; polyethylenoxide for intravenous use; powder of sarcolysin for solution; precipitated calcium carbonate; rectified ethylic spirit; solution of terrilytin for inhalation; suppositories of methyluracil; syrup of broncholytin in phials; tablets of ethylmorphine hydrochloride for adults; tablets of phthivazid.

## **5. Translate prescriptions from English into Latin:**

1. Take: Clear hydrochloric acid 6,0

Distilled water up to 100 ml

Let it be mixed. Let it be given out.

Let it be labelled:

2. Take: Pilocarpine nitrate

Morphine sulphate

Cocaine hydrochloride of each 30,0

Distilled water 20,0 ml

Mix up to make solution

Give out. Denote:

3. Take: Menthol

Camphor

Iodine of each 5,0

Liquid Vaseline 10,0

Mix up. Give out.

Denote:

4. Take: Urotropin

Potassium citrate of each 20,0

Syrup of Lemon 50,0

Destilled water up to 20,0

Mix to make mixture

Give out. Denote:

5. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,015

Powder of rhubarb root

Magnesium oxide of each 0,3

Mix to make a powder

Give out. Denote:

## **Nota bene!**

In this group are included the names of the acid radicals of the oxy-acids ending **-as**:

**Acetas** – acetate; **arsenas** – arsenate; **benzoas** – benzoate; **bicarbonas** – bicarbonate; **carbonas** – carbonate; **citras** – citrate; **dichromas** – dichromate; **nitras** – nitrate; **permanganas** – permanganate; **phosphas** – phosphate; **salicylas** – salicylate; **sulfas** – sulfate; **tartras** – tartrate; **thiosulphas** – thiosulphate.

## **Vocabulary**

**Aethacridīnum, i n** – ethacridine

**Aethazōlum-natrium, i n** – ethazol

sodium

**aether, ēris m** – ether

**aethylīcus, a, um** – ethyl

**Althaea, ae f** – althea

**Apomorphinum, i n** – apomorphine

**Atropīnum, i n** – atropin

**Barbamylum, i n** – Barbamyl

**Benzylpenicillinum, i n** – benzylpenicillin

**Cerebrolysīnum, i n** – cerebrolysin

**Chloroformium, i n** – chloroform

**Codeinum, i n** – codeine

**coeruleus, a, um** – blue

**Coffeinum -natrii benzoas** – coffein-

sodium benzoate

(**Caffeini-natrii benzoatis** – Gen.)

**Ephedrinum, i n** – ephedrine

**isotonicus, a, um** – isotonic

**medicinālis, e** – medical

**Methylēnum, i n** – methylene

**Methylī salicylas** – methyl salicylate

(**Methylī salicylatis** – Gen.)

**parenterālis, e** – parenteral

**pectorālis, e** – pectoral

**Phenylī salicylas** – phenylsalicylate

(**Phenylī salicylatis** – Gen.)

**polyvitaminōsus, a, um** – polyvitaminous

**Pyridoxīnum i n** – pyridoxine

**salicylas, ātis m** – salicylate

**spirituōsus, a, um** – spirituous

**spirītus, us m** – spirit

**suspensio, ūnis f** – suspension

**Theobrominum-natrium, i n** –

theobromine sodium

**vernālis, e** – existing in spring

**vitamīnum, i n** – vitamin

# Unit 22

**Theme: Word-building. IV-V declension of nouns.**

**Declension. Pharmaceutical phraseological phrases.**

**Peculiarities of using noun "species".**

The IV declension includes nouns of the masculine gender, having the ending **-us** in the Nominative singular and nouns of neuter gender having the ending **-u**. In the Genitive case they have ending **-us**.

For example: **spiritus, us m** – alcohol;

**cornu, us n** – horn.

Except to the feminine noun refers **Quercus, us f** – oak.

**Case endings of nouns of IV declension:**

Casus	<i>Singularis</i>		<i>Pluralis</i>	
	masculinum	neutrum	masculinum	neutrum
Nom.	<b>-us</b>	<b>-u</b>	<b>-us</b>	<b>-ua</b>
Gen.	<b>-us</b>	<b>-us</b>	<b>-uum</b>	<b>-uum</b>
Dat.	<b>-ui</b>	<b>-u</b>	<b>-ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
Acc.	<b>-um</b>	<b>-u</b>	<b>-us</b>	<b>-ua</b>
Abl.	<b>-u</b>	<b>-u</b>	<b>-ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

Examples of conjugation of nouns of IV declension:

Casus	<i>Singularis</i>		<i>Pluralis</i>	
	masculinum	neutrum	masculinum	neutrum
Nom.	<b>fructus</b>	<b>cornu</b>	<b>fructus</b>	<b>cornua</b>
Gen.	<b>fructus</b>	<b>cornus</b>	<b>fructuum</b>	<b>cornuum</b>
Dat.	<b>fructui</b>	<b>cornu</b>	<b>fructibus</b>	<b>cornibus</b>
Acc.	<b>fructum</b>	<b>cornu</b>	<b>fructus</b>	<b>cornua</b>
Abl.	<b>fructu</b>	<b>cornu</b>	<b>fructibus</b>	<b>cornibus</b>

The nouns most frequently used are:

**fructus, us m** – fruit;

**haustus, us m** – draught, drink;

**manus, us f** – hand;

**Quercus, us f** – oak;

**spiritus, us m** – spirit;

**usus, us m** – use.

### Nouns of V declension.

The V declension includes nouns of the feminine gender, having the ending **-es** in Nominative singular and **-ei** in the Genitive singular case.

For example: **species, ei f** – 1) type (bot.); 2) collection, tea (drug form)

**scabies, ei f** – scabies

**dies, ei f** – day

### Case endings of the nouns of V declension

Casus	<i>Singularis</i>	<i>Pluralis</i>
Nom.	<b>-es</b>	<b>-es</b>
Gen.	<b>-ei</b>	<b>-erum</b>
Dat.	<b>-ei</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
Acc.	<b>-em</b>	<b>-es</b>
Abl.	<b>-e</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

Example of conjugation of noun **species, ei f** – medicinal species

Casus	<i>Singularis</i>	<i>Pluralis</i>
Nom.	<b>species</b>	<b>species</b>
Gen.	<b>speciei</b>	<b>specierum</b>
Dat.	<b>speciei</b>	<b>speciebus</b>
Acc.	<b>speciem</b>	<b>species</b>
Abl.	<b>specie</b>	<b>speciebus</b>

## Peculiarities of using the noun: species, ei f

The Noun **species, ei f** – collection (drug form) – parts of roots, leaves, flowers, seeds of medicinal plants.

For example: **species antiasthmatae** – antiasthmatic collection,

**species diuretricae** – diuretic collection,

**species laxantes** – laxative collection.

In prescription the noun **species, erum f** is prescribed in Gen. plural:

For example: **Rp.: specierum diureticarum 100.0**

**Rp.: specierum laxantium 200.0**

Prescription phrase with the word «species»:

**Misce, (ut) fiant species** – Mix up, lets species (herbal blend) will be made

The most commonly used nouns are:

**dies, ei f** – day;

**facies, ei f** – face;

**res, ei f** – thing;

**species, ei f** – a collection of herbs, herbal blend.

## Exercise

### 1. Decline by cases in singular and plural the nouns:

spiritus, us m; manus, us f; Quercus, us f.

### 2. Translate into English:

Fel bovis; mucilago Acciae; Hydrogenii monoxidum; Barii peroxidum; Natrii sulfis; elixir phosphori; oleum optimum; vinum album fortis; aqua Ammoniae; infusum Gentianae compositum fortis; oleum Olivarum optimum; species antihaemorrhoidales; status praesens; spiritus dilutus; species diuretiae.

### **3. Translate from Latin into English:**

1. Fructus Carvi pulveratus. 2. Oleum e fructibus Rosae. 3. Fructus Sorbi et fructus Aroniae in medicina adhibentur. 4. E fructibus Capsici tinctura et emplastrum praeparantur. 5. Spiritus saponatus compositus spiritum aethylicum seu spiritum Vini, saponem viridem, oleum Lavandulae continent, pro usu externo ad curationem morborum cutis adhibetur. 6. Oleum Anisi e fructibus Anisi in compositionem Liquoris Ammonii anisati includitur. 7. Homo sapiens. 8. Vir sapiens. 9. Status praesens. 10. Formae remediorum pro infantibus. 11. Saccharum ut remedium corrigens in pulveribus adhibetur.

### **4. Translate into Latin:**

1. Dried fruits alder. 2. Fragrant fennel fruits. 3. Oil of fruits of peanuts. 4. The purified alcohol or ethyl alcohol. 5. Methylene blue solution. 6. Decoction of oak bark. 7. Juice of lemon fruits. 8. Sterile injection. 9. Streptocide fine powder. 10. The bark and fruit of viburnum. 11. Natural gastric juice. 12. Syrup with fresh raspberry fruit.

### **5. Translate the medical prescriptions:**

1. Take: Tincture of spring pheasant's eye herb 180 ml

Sodium bromide 4,0

Codeine phosphate 0,2

Mix. Give out. Denote:

2. Take: Ethylmorphine hydrochloride 0,1

Vaseline 10,0

Mix up to make an ointment

Give out. Denote:

3. Take: Platyphylline hydrotartrate 0,005

Phenobarbital

Papaverin hydrochloride of each 0,02

Give out such a dose in the amount 10

Denote:

4. Take: Tanin

Lead acetate

Extract of Belladonna of each 30,0

Theobrom oil as much as necessary

Mix let be suppositories be made.

Give out. Denote:

5. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,001

Basic lead nitrate

Phenyl salicylate of each 0,25

Mix to make a powder

Give out such a dose in the amount 10

Denote:

6. Take: Menthol 0,1

Zinc oxide

Boric acid of each 0,5

Vaseline 10,0

Mix up to make an ointment

Give out.

Denote:

## Vocabulary

### *Nouns of IV declension*

**abcessus, us m** – abscess

**acus, us m** – needle

**bos, bovis m** – ox

**cornu, us n** – horn

**fructus, us m** – fruit

**spiritus, us m** – alcohol

**status us m** – state

**status praesens** – present state

**usus, us m** – use

### *Nouns of V declension*

**species aromaticae** – aromatic species

**sp. aniasthmatica**e – antiasthmatic collection

**sp. antihaemorrhoidales** – antihemorrhoidal species

**sp. cholagogae** – cholagogue species

**sp. diaphoreticae** – diaphoretic species

**sp. diureticae** – diuretic species

**sp. laxantes** – laxative species

**sp. pectorales** – pectoral species

**sp. sedativa**e – soothing species

**sp. stomachicae** – gastric species

### *Pharmaceutical phraseological phrases*

**ad usum internum** – for internal use

**ad usum externum** – for external use

**ad usum proprium (pro me)** – for own use

**pro die** – for a day

**contra rabiem** – against rabies

**contra scabiem** – against scabies

# Unit 23

**Theme: Systematization and consolidation  
of grammatical models of terms.**

**1. Translate the following words into Latin, write down dictionary form:**

- |           |           |             |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| a) common | c) spring | e) laxative |
| b) green  | d) fruit  | f) nitrate  |

**2. Translate the prescription phrasess into Latin:**

1. for external use
2. Divide into equal parts number...
3. against rabies
4. Give out such doses number...

**3. Translate prescriptions into Latin:**

1. Take: Codeine phosphate 0,015  
Acetylsalicylis acid 0,5  
Ascorbic acid 0,1  
Rutine 0,02  
Mix up, lets powder will be made  
Give out such dose number 20  
Denote:

2. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,02  
Xeroform 0,1  
Zinc sulfate 0,05  
Mix up to make suppository  
Give out such doses number 10  
Denote:

3. Take: Zinc sulfate  
Lead acetate of each 0,3

Distilled water till 200 ml

Mix up. Give out.

Denote:

#### **4. Translate prescriptions into English:**

1. Recipe: Solutionis acidi salicylici spirituosae 1% – 10 ml

Da.

Signa:

2. Recipe: Natrii tetraboratis 2,5

Glycerini 50 ml

Spiritus aethylici 0,5 % ad 10 ml

Misce. Da.

Signa:

3. Recipe: Codeini phosphatis 0,015

Acidi acetylsalicylici 0,5

Acidi ascorbinici 0,1

Rutini 0,02

Dimedroli 0,02

Calcii lactatis 0,1

Misce, fiat pulvis

Da tales doses numero 20

Signa:

#### **5. Translate into Latin:**

1. powdery boric acid;

2. basic nitrate of lead;

3. diuretic species;

4. silver nitrate;

5. tincture of matricary flowers.

# Unit 24

**Theme: Bionominal botanical nomenclature. Grammatical models of botanical names. Names of alkaloids and glycosides.**  
**Bionominal botanical nomenclature.**

Nomenclature of plants in pharmacology can be presented by pharmaceutical names or scientific names in the form of Linnaean binomials. This system, developed by botanist Carl Linnaeus (18th century), provides a first name called the "genus" and the second name called a "species".

The system of naming the plants on a scientific basis is known as botanical nomenclature. Naming of the plants is useful in assigning their identity and relationship.

## **Grammatical model of botanical names.**

Binomial nomenclature (two-term naming system), both of which use Latin grammatical forms. The *first part* of the name – the generic name – identifies the **genus to which the species belongs**, while the *second part* – the specific name – identifies the **species within the genus**.

The generic name is a singular the first letter of generic name is always written in a capital letter. The specific epithet is an adjective and is always written with small letters. It is derived from many may consist of one – two words.

For example: **Oryza sativa** and **Oldenlandia albo-nervia**

The name should be short, precise and easy to.

Depending on what part of speech defined species definition, Botanical names are divided into five grammar models:

### **Genus              Species**

**Model 1**       noun in Nom + noun in Nom. – *Atropa belladonna* (drug Beladonna)

**Model 2**       noun in Nom + noun in Gen. – *Primula veris* (cowslip)

**Model 3**       noun in Nom. + indeclinable noun – *Panax ginseng* (ginseng)

**Model 4**       noun in Nom.+ noun with attribute – *Capsella bursa-pastoris* (shepherd's purse)

**Model 5** noun in Nom. + adjective – *Mentha piperita* (Peppermint)

Comparison between scientific names and common names:

- botanical names are universal while common names are limited to a single language or to a particular geographical region;
- sometimes one vernacular name may be used to different taxons or one taxon may have different common names.

The meaning of the botanical names is listed in table below:

Common name	Botanical name
Aloe Vera	<i>Aloe barbadensis</i>
Arnica	<i>Arnica Montana</i>
Astragalus	<i>Astragalus membranaceus</i>
Barberry	<i>Berberis vulgaris</i>
Bilberry	<i>Vaccinium myrtillus</i>
Calendula	<i>Calendula officinalis</i>
Cayenne	<i>Capsicum annuum</i>
Chamomile	<i>Matricaria recutita</i>
Cinnamon	<i>Cinnamomum zeylanicum</i>
Dandelion	<i>Taraxacum officinale</i>
Dill Seed	<i>Anethum graveolens</i>
Echinacea	<i>Echinacea purpurea</i>
Elder Flower	<i>Sambucus nigra</i>
Fennel	<i>Foeniculum vulgare</i>
Garlic	<i>Allium sativum</i>
Gentian	<i>Gentiana lutea</i>
Ginkgo	<i>Ginkgo biloba</i>
Grape	<i>Vitis vinifera</i>

Hawthorn	<i>Crataegus monogyna</i>
Hops	<i>Humulus lupulus</i>
Juniper	<i>Juniperus communis</i>
Lavender	<i>Lavandula officinalis</i>
Lemon Balm	<i>Melissa officinalis</i>
Licorice	<i>Glycyrrhiza glabra</i>
Althaea	<i>Althaea officinalis</i>
Motherwort	<i>Leonurus cardiac</i>
Nettle	<i>Urtica dioica</i>
Peppermint	<i>Mentha piperita</i>
Raspberry	<i>Rubus idaeus</i>
Red Clover	<i>Trifolium pretense</i>
Rhubarb	<i>Rheum palmatum</i>
Ribwort	<i>Plantago lanceolata</i>
Rosehips	<i>Rosa canina</i>
Rosemary	<i>Rosmarinus officinalis</i>
Sage	<i>Salvia officinalis</i>
Schisandra	<i>Schizandra chinensis</i>
Senna	<i>Cassia</i>
Thyme	<i>Thymus vulgaris</i>
Turmeric	<i>Curcuma longa</i>
Valerian	<i>Valeriana officinalis</i>
Violet	<i>Viola odorata</i>
Wild Cherry	<i>Prunus serotina</i>
Witch hazel	<i>Hamamelis virginiana</i>

## Botanical names of Families

According to the International Code of Botanical Nomenclature, scientific names of plant families have the Latin suffix "**aceae**": Asteraceae, Fabaceae, Rosaceae, etc. Suffix "**aceae**" is Latin for "**a family**" or a "**group**". "Rosaceae" thus means "the Rose family". You use a scientific family name without adding the word "family".

Correct: "Roses are Rosaceae".

Common names of plant families are in the table below:

Common Family Name	Scientific Family Name
Asparagus	Asparagaceae
Aster, Sunflower	Asteraceae
Barberry	Berberidaceae
Birch	Betulaceae
Buckthorn	Rhamnaceae
Buckwheat	Polygonaceae
Flax	Linaceae
Gentian	Gentianaceae
Lily	Liliaceae
Mustard	Brassicaceae
Nettle	Urticaceae
Oak	Fagaceae
Olive	Oleaceae
Poppy	Papaveraceae
Rose	Rosaceae
Valerian	Valerianaceae
Violet	Violaceae

## Alkaloids and Glycosides.

Alkaloids are bitter-tasting chemicals, very widespread in nature, and often toxic, found in many medicinal plants. Among the principal alkaloids and bases Latinized in this way may be noted the following: aconitine, antipyrine, apomorphine, atropine, caffeine, scopolamine, cinchonidine, hyoscyamine, strychnine, codeine, morphine, cocaine, ephedrine, emetine, hematropine, pilocarpine, quinine.

Antraquinone glycosides are found in medicinal plants such as rhubarb, cascara, and Alexandria senna. Plant-based laxatives made from such plants include senna, rhubarb and Aloe.

The cardiac glycosides are powerful drugs from medicinal plants including foxglove and lily of the valley. They include digoxin and digitoxin which support the beating of the heart, and act as diuretics.

Latin names of alkaloids and glycosides are formed with suffix **-in-** and ending **-um**:

For example: **Ephedrinum** (*Ephedra equisetina*) – ephedrine

**Erysimum** (*Erysimum canescens*) – erysimine

**Strophanthinum** (*Strophanthus kombe*) – strophanthine

Sometimes names of glycosides are formed with suffix **-sid-**:

For example: *Erysimum canescens* includes glycosides Erysimum and Erysimumidum.

**Morphological roots of plant origin indicating alkaloids and glycosides  
with different pharmaceutical effects:**

Morphological roots	Latin examples	English equivalents
<b>-anth-</b>	Galanthaminum, i n Helianthus, i m	galanthamin sunflower
<b>-eph-</b>	Ephatinum, i n	ephatin
<b>-ephedr-</b>	Ephedrinum, i n	ephedrin
<b>-phedr-</b>	Theophedrinum, i n	theophedrin
<b>-glyc(y)-</b>	Glycerinum, i n	glycerin

	Corglyconum, i n Glycyrrhiza, ae f Sed: Glucosum, i n	corglycon licorice But: glucose
<b>-phyll-</b>	Euphyllinum, i n Platyphyllinum, i n	euphylline platyphylline
<b>-phyt-</b>	Phytinum, i n Phytolysinum, i n	phytin phytolysin
<b>-stroph-</b>	Strophanthus, i m Strophosanum, i n	strophanthus strophosan
<b>-theo-</b>	Theobrominum, i n Theophedrinum, i n	theobromin theophylline

### Exercises

**1. Translate orally into English:**

1. Planta Papaveris somniferi in medicina adhibetur.
2. Oliva europaea arbor est, olive – fructus.
3. Alcaloidum Platyphyllinum e planta "Senectio platyphylloides" elicitor.
4. Nonnulla olea pinguia, exempli causa, oleum Ricini, oleum jecoris Aselli adhibitionem medicinalem per se habent.
5. Papaveraceae, Cucurbitaceae, Pinaceae, Menyanthaceae sunt familiae plantarum.

**2. Translate into English:**

1. Theobrominum est pulvis crystallinus albus sapore amaro, in aqua aegre solvitur.
2. Multa alcaloida utilissima ex Opio fiunt, exempli causa, alcaloidum Papaverinum, alcaloidum Morphinum.
3. In planta "Delphinium confusum" continentur alcaloidum nomine Condelphinum.

4. Condophilinum est pulvis crystallinus in aqua insolubilis, spiritu facile solvitur; ad morbos nervosos adhietetur.
5. Multa alkaloida venena sunt, ad dosibus parvis in organismum inducta therapeuticam actionem habent.

**3. Translate aloud from Latin into English:**

1. Guttae pro oculis.
2. Emplastrum adhaesivum.
3. Cassia amara est.
4. Pepsinum et Pancreatinum remedia bona sunt.
5. Emulsum olei Ricini non gratum est.
6. Capsulae gelatinosae Morphinum habent.
7. Unguentum Zinci oxidi in olla est.
8. Pancreatinum et acidum hydrochloricum dilutum non miscet.

**4. Translate prescriptions into Latin:**

1. Take: Liquid Formaldehyde 20,0

Clear spirit of wine 15,0

Glycerin 20,0

Water of Cinnamon in sufficient amount

Mix up to make a gargle

Give out. Denote:

2. Take: Menthol

Eucalypt oil

Camphor oil

Oil of Rose of each 30,0

Liquid Petrolat in sufficient amount

Mix to make liniment

Give out. Write on the label:

3. Take: Aether for anesthesia 100 ml

Give out in dark bottle

Write on the label:

4. Take: Strichnine 30,0

Diluted hydrochloric acid 20,0

Essence of Pepsin 30,0

Mix up. Give out.

Denote:

5. Take: Zinc sulfate

Lead acetate of each 0,3

Distilled water till 200 ml

Mix up. Give out. Denote:

6. Take: Rectified ethyl spirit 95 % – 20 ml

Water for injections 100 ml

Let it be mixed

Let it be given out

Let it be labelled:

7. Take: Dimedrol 0,01

Ephedrin hydrochloride 0,1

Peach oil 10 ml

Minth oil 1 drop

Mix up. Give out. Denote:

8. Take: Ophthalmic films with neomycin sulphate number 10

Let it be given out

Let it be labelled:

9. Take: Magnesium carbonate 4,0

Potassium carbonate 5,0

Sodium hydrocarbonate 1,0

Glycerin in sufficient amount

Mix up to make a paste.

Give out. Denote:

## Vocabulary

**Camphōra, ae f** – camphor

**Capsicum, i n** – capsicum; Cayenne pepper

**Cassia, ae f** – cassia

**Chenopodium, i n** – American wormseed

**Cinnamomum, i n** – cinnamon

**Cydonium, i n** – quince seed

**essentia, ae f** – essence

**gargarisma, ātis n** – gargle

**Humulus, i m** – hops

**nebula, ae f** – spray

**Opium, i n** – opium

**Papāver , ēris n** – poppy

**Pepsinum, i n** – pepsin

**stomachicus, a, um** – stomach

**spiritus, us m** – spirit

**vinum, i n** – wine

# Unit 25

## Theme: Degrees of comparison of adjectives. Irregular degrees of comparison.

Latin adjectives are divided into three degrees of comparison:  
positive – *gradus positivus*  
comparative – *gradus comparativus*  
superlative – *gradus superlativus*

In dictionaries the adjectives are given in the positive degree.

### The comparative degree.

To form the comparative degree, it is necessary to find the stem of the positive degree and add the suffix **-ior** for the masculine and feminine forms and **-ius** for the neutral form. The form of Gen. sing. of all three genders in comparative degree is **-oris**.

#### **Positivus**

purus, a, um – clean

niger, gra, grum – black

subillis, e – shallow

simplex, icis – simple

#### **Comparativus**

**purior**, **purius** – cleaner

**nigrior**, **nigrius** – blacker

**subtilior**, **subtilius** – shallower

**simplicior**, **simplicius** – more simple

The full dictionary form of the masculine and the feminine has the ending **-ior**, while the neutral form has **-ius**: **simplicior**, **ius** (written dictionary form) simplicior, simplicius (oral form). Adjectives in the comparative degree have the same pattern of declension as nouns of the III declension. Their distinctive feature is the ending **-oris** in the Genitive.

Example of declining of adjective **subtilis**, **e** in comparative degree:

Case	<i>Singularis</i>			<i>Pluralis</i>		
	<b>m</b>	<b>f</b>	<b>n</b>	<b>m</b>	<b>f</b>	<b>n</b>
Nom.	<b>subtilior</b>		<b>subtilius</b>	<b>subtiliores</b>		<b>subtiliora</b>
Gen.	<b>subtilioris</b>			<b>subtiliorum</b>		
Dat.	<b>subtiliori</b>			<b>subtilioribus</b>		
Acc.	<b>subtiliorem</b>	<b>subtilius</b>		<b>subtiliores</b>	<b>subtiliora</b>	
Abl.	<b>subtiliore</b>			<b>subtilioribus</b>		

### The superlative degree.

Commonly, the superlative degree is formed by adding the suffix **-issim-** and gender endings **-us**, **-a**, **-um** to the stem of the positive degree. The dictionary form of adjectives in the superlative degree is similar to adjectives of the first group with the endings **-us**, **-a**, **-um**. They are declined also like the adjectives of the first group and their stem is determined similarly.

#### Positivus

purus, a, um

subtilis, e

simplex, icis

#### Superlativus

purissimus, a, um – the cleanest

subtilissimus, a, um – the finest

simplicissimus, a, um – the simplest

The superlative degree of adjectives with the ending **-er** is formed by adding the suffix **-rim** and gender endings **-us**, **-a**, **-um** to the form of Nom. sing. of the masculine gender in the positive degree:

#### Positivus

niger, gra, grum

#### Superlativus

nigerrimus, a, um – the blackest

## Irregular degrees of comparison

<i>Positivus</i>	<i>Comparativus</i>	<i>Superlativus</i>
<b>multus, a, um</b> – multiple	<b>plus</b> – large (in quantity)	<b>plurimus, a, um</b> – the most numerous
<b>bonus, a, um</b> – good	<b>melior, melius</b> – better	<b>optimus, a, um</b> – the best
<b>malus, a, um</b> – bad	<b>pejor, pejus</b> – worse	<b>pessimus, a, um</b> – the worst
<b>magnus, a, um</b> – large (great)	<b>major, jus</b> – larger (greater)	<b>maximus, a, um</b> – the greatest
<b>parvus, a, um</b> – small	<b>minor, minus</b> – smaller (less)	<b>minimus, a, um</b> – the least

### Peculiarities of using the adjectives in degrees of comparison in botanical nomenclature.

In botanical nomenclature the comparative and superlative degree of adjectives are translated into English by the positive degree:

*Arctium majus* – large burdock

*Linum usitatissimum* – ordinary flaxseed

*Plantago major* – large plantain

*Cucurbita maxima* – large pumpkin

*Vinca minor* – small perwink

## Exercises

**1. Decline the adjectives in comparative degree in singular and plural, write:**

purior; nigrior; simplicior; rubrior; melior; major.

**2. Coordinate the adjectives with nouns and translate:**

Spissior, spissius (unguentum, i n; massa, ae f; succus, i m; extractum, i n);

recentior, recentius (sirupus, i m; infusum, i n; herba, ae f);

purissimus, a, um (aether pro narcosi, argilla, ae f);  
ruberrimus, a, um (bacca, ae f; flos, floris m; crystallus, i m).

**3. Write down the dictionary forms of each word and translate in Latin the terms:**

Basic lead nitrate; peach oil; rectified ethylic spirit; ether for narcosis; ascorbic acid in tablets; liquid extract of hawthorn; tincture of lily of the valley; sweet tincture; strong solution; light powder; lemon juice; camphor water.

**4. Translate aloud from Latin into English:**

1.Recipe: Pulveris Sennae

Kalii bitartratis  
Sulfuris depurati ana 30,0  
Misce, fiat pulvis  
Da. Signa.

2. Recipe: Tincturae Valerianae 20,0

Tincturae Lavandae 30,0  
Solutionis Ammonii 20,0  
Misce, fiat emulsum  
Da. Signa.

3.Recipe: Decocti cortices Quercus 10,0 – 150,0

Aluminis usti 2,0  
Glycerini 15,0  
Misceatur. Detur. Signetur.

4.Recipe: Tincturae Capsici 5,5

Acidi formicici 0,34  
Liquoris Ammonii caustici 1,5  
Olei camphorati 7,4  
Olei Ricini  
Lanolini anhydrici

Axungiae porcinae ana 9,8

Vaselini flavi ad 100,0

Misce, fiat unguentum.

Detur. Signetur.

**5. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:**

1. Take: Ethylmorphine hydrochloride 0,1

Vaseline 10,0

Mix to make an ointment

Give out. Denote:

2. Take: Oily solution of nitroglycerin 1 % – 0,0005

Let it be given out in such dose amount 20 in capsules

Let it be denoted:

3. Take: Chloroform

Sunflower oil of each 20 ml

Mix to make a liniment

Let it be given out

Let it be denoted:

4. Take: Soluble streptocid 5,0

Solution of glucose 10 % – 100 ml

Mix up. Let it be sterilized!

Give out. Denote:

## NOTA BENE!

**Aqua pura** – pure water

**Ex aqua** – out of water

**Sine aqua** – without water

**Aqua bulliens** – boiling water

**In aqua** – in water

**Subinde** – frequently

**In scatula** – in a box

**Tere** – rub

## Vocabulary

*1st group of adjectives including forms of the superlative degree:*

**compositus, a, um** – complex

**dexter, tra, trum** – right

**latissimus, a, um** – the broadest

**liber, ēra, ērum** – free

**longus, a, um** – long

**magnus, a, um** – large

**sinister, tra, trum** – left

**subtilissimus, a, um** – the finest

**suprēmus, a, um** – supreme

*2nd group of adjectives:*

**brevis, e** – short

**subtilis, e** – fine

**simplex, īcis** – simple

**sublinguālis, e** – sublingual (excepting nerve and bone)

*Adjectives in the form of comparative degree:*

**major, ius** – major, greater

**minor, minus** – minor, lesser

**posterior, ius** – posterior

**superior, ius** – superior, upper

**subtilior, ius** – shallower

**spissior, ius** – thickener

# Unit 26

**Theme: Adverb. Adverbs` degrees of comparison.**

**Powder names by the degree of grinding. Numerals. Pronouns. Special expressions with pronouns in the pharmaceutical terminology.**

Latin adverb is an unchangeable part of speech. Adverbs can modify verbs, adjectives (including numbers), sentences and other adverbs.

## **Formation of adverbs**

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the 1-st and 2-nd declension generally are formed by adding the suffix **-e** to the Genitive sing. stem:

asepticus, a, um – aseptically      **aseptice** – aseptic

exactus, a, um – exactly      **exacte** – exact

frigidus, a, um – coldly      **frigide** – frigidly

2. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the III declension generally are formed by adding the suffix **-iter** to the genitive singular stem, and from adjectives with **-ns** at the end of the word by adding the suffix **-er**.

sterilis, e – sterile (adj.)      **steriliter** – sterile (adv.)

simplex, icis – simple      **simpliciter** – simply

utilis, e – useful      **utilier** – usefully

recens, ntis – fresh (adj.)      **recenter** – fresh (adv.)

3. Although adverbs do not decline in Latin, they do compare. The comparative adverb has the same form Accusative singular neuter of the comparative adjective. The superlative adverb is formed by changing the **-i** of the Genitive singular of the superlative of the Adjective to **-e**. So one type of Latin adverb developed out of the ablative, seen, for instance, in the fifth-declension-looking ending **-ē**, which for some reason was applied mostly to first/second-declension forms.

Within the meaning of adverbs are used the forms of Abl. Sing., Acc. Sing. of the neuter of some adjectives.

citius, a, um – quick	<b>cito</b> – quickly
rarus, a, um – rare	<b>raro</b> – rarely
multus, a, um – multiple	<b>multum</b> – a lot of
facilis, e – easy	<b>facile</b> – easily

### Comparison of adverbs

Adverbs are sometimes formed from adjectives. Occasionally the Nominative singular, or the Ablative singular of adjectives are used. Thus, **primo** - firstly.

The Accusative neuter singular of the comparative form of the adjective is used as the comparative of the adverb by using the ending **-ius** and the superlative is formed by using the ending **-e** instead of **-us**, **-a**, or **-um**.

Into this category can also be put **facile** (the neuter accusative of the positive adjective **facilis**). It's both really, which made the transition from accusative adjective to adverb all the easier.

<i>Positivus:</i>	<b>cito</b> – quickly	<b>raro</b> – rarely
<i>Comparativus:</i>	<b>citius</b> – more quickly	<b>rarius</b> – more rarely
<i>Superlativus:</i>	<b>citissime</b> – very quickly	<b>rarissime</b> – hardly ever

Independent adverbs **diu** – a long time; **deinde** – afterwards, then; **simper** – always; **nune** – now; **minutim** – small, into small particles.

### Adverbs used in the pharmaceutical terminology

- aseptice** – aseptically
- minutim** – small, into small particles
- ana** – equally, in equal parts
- caute** – carefully

**cito** – quickly, urgently

**citissime** – very quickly

**exacte** – exactly

**exactissime** – accurately, by line

**lente** – slowly (the action)

**semilente** – semi slowly (the action)

**ultralente** – very slowly (the action)

**longe** – extremely

**modice** – moderately

**optime** – in the best way

**statim** – immediately

**quantum satis** – as needed

### Powders` names by the degree of grinding

**Pulvis subtilis** – fine powder

**Pulvis modice subtilis** – medium-fine powder

**Pulvis subtilissimus** – very fine powder

**Pulvis longe subtilissimus** — the finest powder

**Pulvis grossus** – coarse powder

**Pulvis modice grossus** – medium-coarse powder

**Pulvis grossissimus** – very coarse powder

**Pulvis longe grossissimus** – the most coarse powder

### Numerals

In Latin numerals are divided into:

cardinal (how many?),

ordinal (what?),

disjunctive (on how many?),

numerals-adverbs (how many times?).

<i>Arabic numerals</i>	<i>Cardinal numerals</i>	<i>Ordinal numerals</i>	<i>Roman numerals</i>
1	unus, a, um	primus, a, um	I
2	duo, duae, duo	secundus, a, um	II
3	tres, tria	tertius, a, um	III
4	quattuor	quartus, a, um	IV
5	quinque	quintus, a, um	V
6	sex	sextus, a, um	VI
7	septem	septimus, a, um	VII
8	octo	octavus, a, um	VIII
9	novem	nonus, a, um	IX
10	decem	decimus, a, um	X
15	quindecim	quindecimus, a, um	XV
18	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus, a, um	XVIII
20	viginti	vicesimus, a, um	XX
100	centum	centesimus, a, um	C
200	ducenti, ae, a	ducentesimus, a, um,	CC
1000	mille	millesimus, a, um	M

### Disjunctive numerals

**singuli, ae, a** – one by one

**bini, ae, a** – two by two

**terni, ae, a** – three by three

### Numerals-adverbs

**semel** – once

**bis** – two times

**ter** – three times

## The complex and compound numerals

Complex numerals with the last number 8 or 9 are formed by subtraction of the name of one or two from the name of the next ten:

- duodeviginti (two from twenty)
- undeviginti (one from twenty)

Compound cardinal numerals from 21 to 99 are formed by 2 ways:

a) at first, the number of units is given, and then the names of tens with conjunction et:

25 – quinque et viginti                    27 – septem et viginti

b) on the first place is given the number of tens, then – the number of units:

25 – viginti quinque                    27 – viginti septem

In big numbers at first is given the number of higher digit without conjunction:

155 – centum quinquaginta quinque.

In complex ordinal numerals all the numbers are ordinals, and in English only the last word is the ordinal numeral: fifty fifth – quinquagesimus quintus.

## Cardinal and ordinal numerals` declension

Cardinal numerals **unus, a, um** – one; **duo, duae, duo** – two; **tres, tria** – three; the names of hundreds, thousands are declined.

Numeral unus, a, um is used only in singular, the others — only in plural.

Casus	Singularis			Pluralis		
	<b>m</b>	<b>f</b>	<b>n</b>	<b>m</b>	<b>f</b>	<b>n.</b>
Nom.	unus	una	unum	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	unius			duorum	duarum	duorum
Dat.	uni			duobus	duabus	duobus
Acc.	unum	unam	unum	duos	duas	duo
Abl.	uno	una	uno	duobus	duabus	duobus

Pluralis				Pluralis		
Casus	m	f	n	m	f	n
Nom.	tres	tres	tria	ducenti	ducentae	ducenta
Gen.	trium		ducentorum		ducentarum	ducentorum
Dat.	tribus			ducentis		
Acc.	tres	tres	tria	ducentos	ducentas	ducenta
Abl.	tribus		ducentis			

The ordinal numeral adjectives, translated in English as "**first**", "**second**", "**third**", etc., have but a limited use. They have endings **-us**, **-a**, **-um**, making them adjectives of the first and second declensions and are declined like **unus**. The ordinals from first to twentieth are given in the above tab and disjunctive numerals are declined in the same way, that adjectives of I and II declensions. Numerals-adverbs are not declined. In Latin cardinal numerals are coordinated with nouns in gender, number and case:

Two drops – **guttae duae**.

### Derivation using numerals

Some pharmaceutical terms and botanical names are formed with numerals-prefixes.

Prefixes	Meaning	Prefixes	Meaning
<b>un-</b> ( <b>uni-</b> )	one-	<b>sex(i)-</b>	six-
<b>du(o)-</b> , <b>bi-</b>	two-	<b>septi-</b>	seven-
<b>ter-</b> , <b>tri-</b>	three-	<b>octo-</b>	eight-
<b>quadr(i)-</b>	four-	<b>deci-</b>	ten-
<b>quinque(i)-</b>	five-		

For example:

Rudbeckia **bicolor** – rudbeckia bicolour

Viola **tricolor** – trinity violet

Oxycoccus **quadripetalus** – moorberry tetrapetalous

## Pronouns

In Latin there are the next pronouns:

personal (**ego** – me, **tu** – you),

reflexive (**sui** – itself, oneself),

possessive (**meus, a, um** – my; **tuus, a, um** – your),

demonstrative (**is, ea, id** – that; **hic, haec, hoc** – this),

relative (**qui, quae, quod** – who, which, that),

correlative (**talis, e** – such; **qualis, e** – such as),

negative (**nemo** – nobody, noone; **nihil** – nothing),

interrogative (**quis?** – who? **quid?** – what?).

### Expressions with pronouns used in pharmacy:

**pro me (pro auctore)** – for me (for the author) (me – Abl. sing. from ego – me)

**per se** – pure, chemically pure (se – Acc. sing. from sui – oneself)

**Da (Dentur) tales doses numero...** – Deliver (shall be delivered) such doses in number of... (tales – Nom., Acc. plur. from talis, e – such)

**e qua** – from which (Abl. sing. from qui, quae, quod – who)

**Misce, ut fiat massa pilularum, e qua formentur pilulae numero...** – Mix to form a pill mass, and form from it a number of pills...

**cui adde** – to which add (cui – Dat. sing. from qui, quae, quod – which)

**Misce, ut fiat mixtura, cui adde...** – Mix to form a mixture, to which ad.

## Exercises

**1. Write in Latin:**

5; 10; 9; 100; 11; 15; 20; 200; 1000; 3; 16; 2; 8; 4; 12; 17; 19.

**2. Translate into English:**

1. Duae drachmae.
2. Quindecimus.
3. Novem librae.
4. Quarta pars.
5. Vicesima pars.
6. Octo decime.
7. Quartus decimus.
8. Quinquaginta.
9. Octavus.
10. Viginti.
11. Secundus.
12. Ad partes duas.
13. Divide in pilulas duas.
14. Undeviginti.

**3. Translate into Latin:**

1. Six drachms of tincture of nux vomica.
2. One tincture of compound Gentian.
3. Two elixirs of sulphuric acid.
4. Take one onces of compound tincture of lavender.
5. Take three drachms of diluted hydrochloric acid.
6. Four drachms of soda.
7. Take of iodoform ten grams.

**4. Translate prescriptions into English:**

1. Recipe: Aluminis exsiccati

Tannini

Olei Theobromatis quantum satis

Misce bene, fiant suppositoria

Da. Signa:

2. Recipe: Acidi salicylici

Olei Therebenthinae

Acidi acetici ana 30.0

Misce, fiat pasta

Da. Signa:

3. Recipe: Hydrargyry Chloridi mitis

Tincturae Hyoscyami

Misce et divide in chartas

Da. Signa.

**5. Translate the medical prescriptions:**

1. Take: Tincture of spring pheasant's eye herb 180 ml

Amidopyrin 2,0

Sodium bromide 4,0

Codeine phosphate 0,2

Mix up. Give out. Denote:

2. Take: Ethylmorphine hydrochloride 0,1

Vaseline 10,0

Mix to make an ointment

Give out. Denote:

3. Take: Phenobarbital

Papaverin hydrochloride of each 0,02

Give out such a dose in the amount 10

Denote:

4. Take Coated tablets of oleandoandomycin phosphate

0,125 number 25

Let it be given out

Let it be denoted:

5. Take: Morphine hydrochloride 0,01

Apomorphine hydrochloride 0,05

Diluted hydrochloric acid 1 ml

Distilled water up to 200 ml

Let it be mixed. Let it be given

Let it be denoted:

6. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,001

Basic bismuth nitrate

Phenyl salicylate of each 0,25

Mix to make a powder

Give out such a dose in the amount 10

Denote:

7. Take: Rectified ethyl spirit 95 % –20 ml

Water for injections 100 ml

Let it be mixed

Let it be given out

Let it be denoted:

8. Take: Dimedrol 0,01

Ephedrin hydrochloride 0,1

Peach oil 10 ml

Mint oil 1 drop

Mix up. Give out. Denote:

## Vocabulary

**unus, a, um** – one

**duo** – two

**tres** – three

**duodecim** – twelve

**quindecim** – fifteen

**viginti** – twenty

**triginta** – thirty

**quinquaquinta** – fifty

**centum** – a hundred

**secundus, a, um** – second

**tertius, a, um** – third

**quartus, a, um** – fourth

**quintus, a, um** – fifth

**sextus, a, um** – sixth

**septimus, a, um** – seventh

**octavus, a, um** – eighth

**nonus, a, um** – ninth

**decimus, a, um** – tenth

# Unit 27

**Theme: Abbreviations in prescriptions.**

## **The most important prescription abbreviations.**

Writing prescriptions, doctors use generally accepted abbreviations.

The abbreviations in use include the names of ingredients, amounts, directions, to the pharmacist, and even the phrases used in the signature which were formerly written in Latin.

There are no established abbreviations for the names of drugs: they should be written out in full to avoid the possibility of serious mistake.

The names of medicinal forms grow short, names of parts of plants and standard compounding formulations. Such reductions contain one or two initial letters of words:  
E.g. **hb.** – herba; **M.** – Misce; **Liq.** – liquor; **inf.** – infusum; **ol.** – oleum.

If a word is reduced by syllable, which included a few consonants, they are all stored in the reduction:

E.g. **extr.** – extractum, **ung.** – unguentum.

### **There are some rules of abbreviations:**

1. It is possible to write in short form in prescriptions the names of dosage forms and aluminous preparations, the names of parts of plants, prescription expressions.
2. It is not possible to use the abbreviations of ingredients with similar names, which don't give the opportunity to understand what kind of medicine is prescribed.
3. There is a consonant at the end of abbreviation, if some consonants stand by, the abbreviation is finished by the last one.
4. Some prescription expressions can be maximally abbreviated.

**Only in the part of prescription Prescriptio can be used maximal abbreviations, when only one letter is left (D.t.d. N).**

5. There are the unusual abbreviations which should be memorized: hb – herbae, pct – precipitati, āā – ana ect.

## The most important prescription abbreviations.

Abbreviations	Complete form	Translation
āā	ana	by, equally, in equal parts
ac., acid.	acidum	acid
acet.	acetum	vinegar
ad us. ext.	ad usum externum	for external use
ad us. int.	ad usum internum	for internal use
ad 2 vic.	ad duas vices	in two doses
ad sec. vic.	ad secundum vicem	to the second time
agit.	agita	shake
aq.	aqua	water
aq. aerat.	aqua aerata	carbonated water
aq. astr.	aqua astricta	frozen water
aq. bull.	aqua bulliens	boiling water
aq. dest.	aqua destillata	distilled water
aq. ferv.	aqua fervens	hot water
aq. font.	aqua fontalis	spring water
aq. mar.	aqua marina	sea water
aq. niv.	aqua nivalis	snow water
bib.	bibe	drink
bis in d.	bis in die	twice a day
bol.	bolus	a large pill
but.	butyrum	butter
caerul.	caeruleus, a, um	blue
caps.	capsula	capsule
cataplasm.	cataplasma	poultice
cerat.	ceratus, a, um	cerate
comp., cps., cpt.	compositus	compound

concentr.	concentratus	concentrated
cort.	cortex	cortex
chart. cerat.	charta cerata	waxed paper
chartul.	chartula	small paper
cib.	cibus	food, meal
coch.	cochleare	spoonful
coct.	coctio	boiling
col.	cola	strain
cons.	conserva	keep
consperg.	consperge	dust, sprinkle
cort.	cortex	bark, peel
D.	Da. Detur. Dentur.(pl.)	Give out. Let it be given out.
dec., dct.	decoctum	decoction
decub.	decubitus	lying down
dep.	depuratus	purified
dil.	dilutus	diluted
D.t.d.	Da (Dentur) tales doses	Give out. Let it be given such doses
div.	divide	divide
empl.	emplastrum	plaster
emuls.	emulsum	emulsion
extr.	extractum	extract
f.	fiat, fiant	Let it be formed. Let it be made.
fl.	flos	flower
fluid.	fluidus	liquid
fol.	folium	leaf
fr.	fructus	fruit
ft.cataplasm.	fiat cataplasma	let a poultice be made
ft. cerat.	fiat ceratum	let acerate be made

ft. chart.	fiat chartae	let be papers be made
ft. colyr.	fiat collyrium	let an eye-wash be made
ft empl.	fiat emplastrum	let a plaster be made
ft.garg.	fiat gargarisma	let a gargle be made
gel.	gelatinosus	gelatinous
gran.	granulum	granule
gtt., gtts.	guttam, guttas	drop, drops
h., hb.	herba	grass, herb
in ampull.	in ampullis	in ampoules
in caps.	in capsulis	in capsules
inf.	infusum	infusion
in obl.	in oblatis	in capsules
in tabl.	in tabulettis	in tablets
in vitr. nigr.	in vitro nigro	in black glass
linim.	linimentum	liniment
liq.	liquor	liquid
M.	Misce. Misceatur.	Mix. Let it be mixed. To mix.
mucil.	mucilago	mucilage
N.	numero	number
obd.	obductus	coated
ol.	oleum	oil
past.	pasta	paste
praec., pct., ppt.	praecipitatus	precipitated
pro inject.	pro injectionibus	for injections
pulv.	pulvis	powder
q.s.	quantum satis	as needed, as necessary
r., rad.	radix	root, radix
Rp.:	Recipe	Take

rectif.	rectificatus	rectified
rhiz.	rhizoma	rhizome
S.	Signa. Signetur.	Mark. Let it be marked. Write on a label. Denote.
sem.	semen	seed
simpl.	simplex	simple
sir.	sirupus	syrup
sol.	solutio	solution
spec.	species	species, dry plant collection
spir.	spiritus	alcohol
Steril.	Sterilisa! Sterilisetur!	Sterilize. Let it be sterilized!
supp.	suppositorium	suppository
supp. vagin.	suppositorium vaginale	vaginal suppository
susp.	suspensio	suspension
tab.	tabuletta	tablet, pill
t-ra, tinct.	tinctura	infusion
ung.	unguentum	ointment

## Exercises

### 1. Translate prescriptions into Latin, write in short form:

1. Take: Codeine phosphate 0,015

Acetylsalicylic acid 0,5

Ascorbic acid 0,1

Rutine 0,02

Mix up, lets powder will be made

Give out such doses number 20

Denote: 3 times a day

2. Take: Castor oil 20 ml

Xeroform 1,2

Vinilin 1 ml

Mix up, lets liniment will be made.

Give out. Denote: for bandages

3. Take: Extract of the Valerian 0,3

Tinctures of the Hawthorn 0,015

Tinctures of Pieplant 0,8

Mix up. Give out. Denote: 1 tea-spoon 3 times a day

4. Take: Pills of Furacillin 0,02

Give out such doses number 10

Denote: 1 pill in glass of water for the rinse

5. Take: Soluble streptocid d 5,0

Solution of glucose 10 % – 100 ml

Mix. Let it be sterilized!

Give out. Denote:

6. Take: Cortex of althea

Cortex of licorice

Seed of flax of each 10,0

Leaves of eucalyptus 2,5

Mix to make a species

Give out. Denote:

## **2. Write in short form the names of dosage forms:**

Solutio, pulvis, species, suppositorium, sirupus, radix, folium, mixtura, infusum, aqua, oleum, tictura, gutta, tabuletta, decoctum, suspension, rhizoma, extractum.

## **3. Translate the terms:**

Misceatur. Detur. Signetur.

Sterilisetur.

Recipe.

Dentur tales doses.

Misce, fiant species.

Da in charta cerata.

Divide in partes aequales numero 6.

**4. Write in full form:**

a) sol., aa., ol., aq., hb., ac., empl., t-rae, gtt., ung., amyl., in tab.

**5. Translate the medical prescriptions, write in short form:**

1. Take: Extract of Belladonna 100 ml

Basic nitrate 2,1

Extract of Spring Adonis 50 ml

Mix. Give out. Denote:

2. Take: Seeds of Fennel 15,0

Buds of birch 10,0

Dried licorice root 20,0

Mix to make herb collection

Give out. Denote:

3. Take: Platiphylline hydrotartrate 0,005

Phenobarbital

Papaverin hydrochloride of each 0,02

Give such a dose in the amount 10

Denote:

4. Take: Coated tablets of oleandoandomycin

phosphate 0,125 number 25

Let it be given

Let it be denoted:

5. Take: Green brilliant

Aethyl alcohol

Nystatin of each 1,0

Destillate water up to 100 ml

Mix. Give out. Denote:

6. Take: Thiamine chloride

Riboflavin of each 0,0005

Ascorbic acid 0,1

Nicotinic acid 0,03

Give out such doses number 50 in coated tablets

Denote:

7. Take: Ichthyol 1,25

Zinc oxide

Wheat starch of each 12

Vaseline up to 50,0

Mix to make paste

Give out. Denote:

8. Take: Pectoral species 50,0

Give out. Denote:

9. Take: Ophthalmic films with neomycin sulphate number 10

Let it be given out. Let it be labelled:

10. Take: Magnesium carbonate 4,0

Potassium carbonate 5,0

Sodium hydrocarbonate 1,0

Glycerin in sufficient amount

Mix to make a paste

Give out. Denote

***Control questions:***

1. How many letters are there in the abbreviations?
2. How are formed the abbreviations, which have two consonants in composition?
3. Is it possible to reduce the names of medicines and plants?

**Vocabulary**

**Glycyrrhiza, ae f** – licorice, licorice root

**Althaea, ae f** – althea, marshmallow

**Adonis vernalis, m, f** – spring adonis

**(Adonidis vernalis)**

**Aloe, es f** – aloe

**Digitalis, is f** – digitalis

**Hypericum, i n** – St. John's wort

**Millefolium, i n** – yarrow

**Foeniculum, i n** – fennel

**pix, picis f** – resin

**pix liquida** – tar

**Betula, ae f** – birch

**Terebinthina, ae f** – turpentine

**Leonurus, i m** – motherwort

**in charta cerata** – in cerated paper

# Unit 28

**Theme: Latin nomenclature of native medical forms. Firm, soft, and liquid forms of medicines. Lay out of prescriptions for firm medical remedies.**

All forms of medicines by their aggregate there are divided into solid, soft, liquid and aerosols (formae medicamentorum durae, molles, fluidae, aërosola).

There are some groups for the dosage forms of injections (formae medicamentorum pro injectionibus), dosage forms for eyes (formae medicamentorum pro oculis), dosage forms for infants and children up to three years (formae medicamentorum pro infantibus).

Depending on the roots of introduction in the organism the dosage forms are divided into 2 groupes: enteral (enteron, i n – intestine) – are introduced through the digestive tract, parenteral (para – beside, near) – which are outgoing digestive tract.

## **Solid form drugs (Formae medicamentorum durae)**

1. Powders – pulveres (pulvis, eris m)
2. Tablettes, pills – tabulettae (tabulettä, ae f)
3. Dragee – dragee (dragee, n)
4. Granules – granula (granulum, i n)
5. Gathers – species (species, ei f)
6. Capsules – capsulae (capsula, ae f)

### **1. Powders – pulveres**

Powders – is a solid dosage form, which is characterized by a friability.

**By the number of ingredients** the powders are divided into:

simple powders – *pulveres simplices*;  
composite powders – *pulveres compositi*.

**By the way of use:**

powders for external use – *pulveres ad usum externum*;

powders for external use – *pulveres ad usum internum*.

**By the dosage:**

powders divided into doses – *pulveres divisi*;

undivided powders – *pulveres indivisi*.

**By the way of prescription:**

powders for one dose – *pulveres pro dosi*;

powders for a day (a daily dose) – *pulveres pro die*.

**Powders are introduced:**

orally, by mouth – *per os*,

by powdering – *per aspersionem*,

by insufflation – *per insufflationem*,

by injection – *per injectionem*,

through the rectum, rectally – *per rectum*,

by rinsing – *per gargarisma*.

**Powders are delivered** in *capsulis operculatis*, in *capsulis chartaceis*, in *charta cerata*, *paraffinata*, *pergaminata*.

## 2. Tablets – tabulettae

Tablet – is a solid drug form that contains an active drug (as a dried powder) plus inert ingredients (binders and fillers) to provide bulk and ensure a standardized tablet size. Standard tablet shapes: round, oval, square, oblong. Tablet is an officinal drug form, prepared at the pharmaceutical companies.

Many drugs are delivered in *tabulettis obductis* — in tablets, covered by a tegument.

### **3. Dragee — dragee**

Dragee – a form of medicine that is obtained superimposition of drugs on sugar granules.

### **4. Granules – granula**

Granules – is a drug of different form containing drug substances for internal use, seeds of different forms in weight up to 0,05. Pharmaceutical industry produces *granula Orazi*, *granula Plantaglucidi*, *granula Glycerophosphati*, *granula Aethazoli natrii pro infantibus*.

### **5. Herbal blends – species**

Herbal blend – a mixture of several types of dried and crushed herbs in full form or of their parts (flowers, leaves, grass, fruits, roots, rhizomes, and so on), from which are prepared infusions and decoctions.

There such groupes of blends:

1. *Species ad infusa et decocta* – blends for infusions and decoctions.
2. *Species fumales* – blends for smoking.
3. *Species pro balneis* – blends for bathing.

### **6. Capsules – capsulae**

Capsules – a drug contained in a shell of gelatin (either soft or hard) that dissolves in 10 to 20 minutes. Drug may be in either solid or liquid form. Shape of dosage form may be spheric or ovoid. Capacity of capsule may vary up to 1 g. Can be produced manually or by using the punch method.

There are:

*capsulae (gelatinosae) durae operculatae* – solid (gelatinous) capsules with cap;

*capsulae (gelatinosae) molles* – soft (gelatinous) capsules;

*perlae gelatinosae* – gelatinous pearls that can be oval, in the form of small balls;

*tubatinae* – tubatines – in the form of small bottles;

*pelettae* – pellets – capsules, prescribed for use under the skin by the surgical way.

The capsules, which are used rectally (per rectum), are named *capsulae rectales*.

*Microcapsulae* with dimensions from 1 to 500 micromillimetres, *nanocapsulae* (nanus, i m – dwarf) with dimension till 1 micromillimetre.

### **Liquid dosage forms (Formae medicamentorum fluidae)**

1. Solutions – *solutiones* (*solutio, onis f*)
2. Suspensions – *suspensiones* (*suspensio, onis f*)
3. Emulsions – *emulsa* (*emulsum, i n*)
4. Liniments – *linimenta* (*linimentum, i n*)
5. Infusions and decoctions – *infusa et decocta* (*infusum, i n; decoctum, i n*)
6. Drops – *guttae* (*gutta, ae f*)
7. Tinctures – *tincturae* (*tinctura, ae f*)
8. Extracts – *extracta* (*extractum, i n*)
9. Mucilages – *mucilagines* (*mucilago, inis f*)
10. Mixtures – *mixturae* (*mixtura, ae f*)
11. Syrups – *sirupi* (*sirupus, i m*)
12. Aromatic water – *aquae aromaticae*

#### **I. Solutions – solutiones**

Solutions – are the simplest liquid medical form which is intended for external applications, per oral applications and for parenteral administrations. By type of solvent the solutions can be divided into water, alcoholic, oil, combined and other solvents:

*solutiones aquosae* – water solutions,

*solutiones spirituosae* – alcohol solutions,

*solutiones oleosae seu olea medicata* – oil solutions or medical oils,

*solutiones glycerinatae* – glycerol solutions,

*solutiones pro anaesthesia* – solutions for anesthesia,

*solutiones plasmosubstituentes* – plasma substituting solutions.

Solutions are delivered: *in ampullis* – in ampoules, *in spritz-tubulis* – in pre-filled syringes, *in rectiolis* – in rectal pipettes, containing 3.5 ml solution for microclysters.

## **II. Suspensions – suspensiones**

Suspensions – are the liquid medical forms, two-phase system, which contains disperse phase formed by particles of unsoluble in the water medical agents (powders) and disperse medium represented by water, oils, glycerinol other fluids. This medical form is intended for external, internal and parenteral applications.

## **III. Emulsions – emulsa**

Emulsion – are liquid pharmaceutical form, two-phase system with dispersion phase like unsolvable in water liquid, fat, or ether oils, balsams.

The disperse medium is offered by water. The emulsions are represented by the stable suspensions of the fat-drops in water. There are two kinds of emulsions such as: seminal (*emulsa seminalia*) and oil (*emulsa oleosa*).

## **IV. Liniments – linimenta**

Liniments typically are formulated from alcohol, acetone or similar quickly evaporating solvents and contain counterirritant aromatic chemical compounds, such as methyl salicylate, benzoic resin or capsaicin. Liniment is a medicated topical preparation for application to the skin. The basis (*remedium constituens*) for liniments is vegetable oil (*oleum Helianthi*, *oleum Amygdalarum*, *oleum Ricini* etc).

## **V. Infusions and decoctions – infusa et decocta**

**Infusions** – are aqueous extract from plant raw material, which are obtained by the way of drawing the grinded, dried leaves, flowers, herbs on the water bath or by the way of soliving extracts. Infusions frequently are prescribed for internal use and rarely – for external use.

**Decoctions** – are the liquid medical forms which are also obtained by the way of water extracting acting substances from plant material on the water bath or by the way

of solving the concentrates. For preparations decoctions are usually used roots, rhizome or cortex.

## **VI. Drops – guttae**

This is a variety of solutions and mixtures, which are dosed in drops:

*oculoguttae* – drops for eyes,

*nasoguttae* – drops for nose,

*otoguttae* – ear drops.

Drops are prescribed in small amounts (20 ml).

## **VII. Tinctures – tincturae**

Tinctures are represented by (spirituous) alcoholic, hydroalcoholic, alcohol-ether liquid extracts from plant raw material. There are three methods of preparing tinctures, such as maceration (drawing), percolation (pressing) or dissolving of the dry extracts.

All tinctures are officinal. It means that their concentration is detected by Pharmacopeia. And they are manufacturing on the pharmaceutical factories. They are stable and can be keeping for a long time.

## **VIII. Extracts – extracta**

Extracts – are the concentrated drawing usually obtained from medicinal plant raw material. Extraction substances are water, ethyl alcohol, hydroalcoholic solutions. For consistency are *extracta fluida, spissa, sicca* – extracts liquid, thick and dry.

All liquid extracts are officinal forms. They are written out and prescribed the same way as the tincture.

## **IX. Mucilages – mucilagines**

Mucilage – is a rare form of drugs, which are obtained by processing by water the vegetable raw containing mucous substances (*gummi arabicum* – Arabian gum, *gummi Armeniacae* – Apricot gum, *amylum* – starch, *semina Lini* – linseed, *radices Althaeae* – Althea roots). Sometimes mucilages are prescribed *per se*, more often – in mixtures.

## X. Mixtures – mixturae

Mixtures are liquid medical forms consisting of the solvent (water, aromatic distilled water, alcohol, infusions, decoction, emulsions, tinctures etc.) and two or more solid medical agents dissolved in or received by the way of mixing some liquids.

## XI. Syrups – sirupi

Syrups are concentrated aqueous preparations of a sugar substitute with or without flavoring agents and medicinal substances. Syrup – often used as vehicles for unpleasant tasting medications, the result is medicated syrup (*sirupus Rhei* – rhubarb syrup, *sirupus Althaeae* – althea syrup, *sirupus Glycyrrhizae* – licorice syrup), others – like flavors (*sirupus simplex seu sirupus Sacchari* – simple syrup or sugar syrup, *sirupus Rubi idaei* – raspberry syrup).

## XII. Aromatic water – aquae aromaticae

Aromatic water – water-alcohol liquid containing essential oils (*aqua Foeniculi* – water dill, *aqua Menthae piperitae* – peppermint water, *aqua Coriandri spirituosa* – coriander alcohol water).

## Soft drug forms (Formae medicamentorum molles)

1. *Unguenta* – ointments (*unguentum, i n*)
2. *Pastae* – pastes (*pasta, ae f*)
3. *Suppositoria* – suppositories (*suppositorium, ii n*)
4. *Globuli* – balls (*globulus, i m*)
5. *Bacilli* – sticks, pencils (*bacillus, i m; stilus, i m; stylus, i m*)
6. *Emplastra* – plasters (*emplastrum, i n*)
7. *Pilulae* – pills (*pilula, ae f*)

## **I. Ointments – unguenta**

Ointment – a soft form of medicine that is applied to the skin, wound, mucous. The ointment consists of the drug (one or more) and ointment bases (*Vaselinum*, *Lanolinum*, *adeps suillus depuratus etc.* – vaseline, lanolin, refined lard).

*Oculenta, unguenta ophthalmica, unguenta pro oculis* – ointments for eyes.

## **II. Pastes – pastae**

Pastes – a thick ointment containing more than 25% of powdered substance. This is not a dosated drug.

## **III. Suppositories – suppositoria.**

Suppositories – a soft drug dosage form, solid at room temperature and softened at the body temperature. There are 3 types of suppositories: rectal, vaginal and sticks. The basis for making suppositories and balls are *oleum Cacao*, *olea vegetabilia*, *mixturae cum cera*, *Lanolinum etc.* (cocoa butter, vegetable oils, a mixture of wax, lanolin).

Suppositories which are introduced *per rectum*, are named *suppositoria rectalia*, which are introduced *per vaginam* – *suppositoria vaginalia*. The last, depending on form, are divided into *globuli* – globules, *ovula* – ovuls (ovum, i n — egg), *bacilli* – sticks, *pessaria* (*pessarium, ii n*) – pessaries.

## **IV. Plasters – emplastra**

Plasters – medicated preparations that adhere to the skin by a backing material.

By the aggregate state they are divided into *emplastra dura et fluida* – solid and soft plasters.

Mustard plasters – *chartae Sinapis seu sinapismata* – types of plasters. *Sinapismus saccinus activatus* – mustard plaster – activated package.

## **V. Pills – pilulae**

Pill – dosage form of the drug for internal use, small ball weighing from 0,1 to 0,5.

Pills weighing more than 0,5 are called poles – *boli*; less than 0,1 are called granules – *granula*.

### Aerosols – aërosola

Aerosols – a dispersed system in which the dispersed medium is gas or gas mixture, and the dispersed phase consists of solid particles or liquid. There are *aërosola pro inhalationibus seu aërosola interna et aërosola externa* – aerosol for inhalation or aerosol sprays internal and externa.

## Exercises

### 1. Translate into English:

1. In solutionem Glucosi 25% adde aseptice tincturae Strophanthi guttas V.
2. Decocta et infusa recenter parata dantur.
3. Adde sirupum Glycyrrhizae quantum satis.
4. Recipe olei Cacao quantum satis, ut fiant suppositoria rectalia.
5. Da medicamenta aegroto gratis.
6. Misce pulveres exactissime.
7. Extracta raro per se praescribuntur.

### 2. Translate aloud prescriptions from Latin into English:

1. Recipe: Extracti Viburni fluidi 30 ml.

Da. Signa:

2. Recipe: Chlorali hydratis 2,0

Mucilaginis Lini 40,0

Aquae destillatae ad 100,0

Misce. Da. Signa:

3. Recipe: Infusi herbae Thermopsis ex 0,45 – 180,0

Natrii benzoatis 0,6

Sirupi Glycyrrhizae 18,0

Misce. Da. Signa:

4. Recipe: Olei Amygdalarum 10 ml

Gummi Armeniacae 5,0

Aquae destillatae 85 ml

Misce, fiat emulsum

Da. Signa:

5. Recipe: Emulsi olei Menthae piperitae 50 ml

Da. Signa:

6. Recipe: Oxytetracyclini 1,0

Olei Olivarum ad 100,0

Misce, fiat suspensio

Da. Signa:

### **3. Translate the medical prescriptions:**

1. Take: Liquid extract of Aloe 1ml

Give out such doses in ampoules number 18

Denote:

2. Take: Tincture of Valeriane

Tincture Lily of the valley of each 10 ml

Mix up. Give out. Denote:

3. Take: Cocoa butter 5 ml

Give out such doses in gelatinous capsules

Denote:

4. Take: Emulsion of peachy oil 200 ml

Give out. Denote:

5. Take: Ointment of turpentine oil 6.0

Give out in dark bottle.

Denote:

6. Take: Theophylline 0,2

Cocoa oil 2,0

Mix to make a rectal suppository

Give out. Write on the label:

7. Take: Cortex of althea

Cortex of licorice

Seed of flax of each 10,0

Leaves of eucalyptus 2,5

Mix to make a species

Give out. Write on the label:

8. Take: Suppositories with nitroglycerin

Let it be given in such dose amount 20

Let it be labelled:

## Vocabulary

### 1. Solid forms:

**Dragées** (dragée, a French word which is used without latinization in plural and has no Latin dictionary form) – drops

**Granūla** (**granūlum, i n**) – granules of different form containing drug substances

**Pilūlae** (**pilūla, ae f**) – pills, small balls with a drug substance

**Pulvēres** (**pulvis, ēris m**) – powders

**Species** (**species, ērum f**, only Plural form) – species, mixture of different parts of medicinal plants

**Tabulettae** (**tabuletta, ae f**) – tablets

**Theae** (**thea, ae f**) – teas

### 2. Semisolid forms:

**Emplastra** (**emplastrum, i n**) – plasters

**Pastae** (**pasta, ae f**) – pastes, thick ointments

**Suppositoria** (**suppositorium, i n**) – suppositories

**Unguenta** (**unguentum, i n**) – ointments

### 3. Liquid forms:

**Decocta** (**decoctum, i n**) – decoctions

**Emulsa** (**emulsum, i n**) – emulsions

**Extracta** (**extractum, i n**) – extracts

**Guttae** (**gutta, ae f**) – drops (of liquids)

**Infūsa** (**infūsum, i n**) – infusions

**Linimenta** (**linimentum, i n**) – liniments

**Mixtūrae** (**mixtūra, ae f**) – mixtures

**Mucilagīnes** (**mucilāgo, īnis f**) – mucilages, liquids containing mucous substances

**Olea** (**oleum, i n**) – oils

**Sirūpi** (**sirūpus, i m**) – syrups

**Solutōnes** (**solutio, ūnis f**) – solutions

Tinctūrae (**tinctūra, ae f**) – tinctures

*Some other drug forms:*

Aërosōla (**aërosōlum, i n**) – aerosols

Capsūlae (**capsūla, ae f**) – capsules

Lamellae (=Membranūlae) ophthalmīcae (**lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f**) – ophthalmic films with drug.

# Unit 29

## **Theme: Systematization of information about prepositions.**

Preposition is a word that shows the relationship between a noun or pronoun and another words. In Latin, as in English, prepositions are almost always placed before the words they define. In pharmaceutical terminology prepositions are often used in prescription phrases, in names of preparations, in special phrases which means the way of use of medical preparations.

### **I. Prepositions in prescription phrases:**

**in spritz-tubulis** – in syring-tubes

**in tabulettis** – in tablets

**in tabulettis obductis** – in coated tablets

**in vitro** – in bottle

**in vitro nigro** – in dark (black) bottle

**in charta cerata** – in waxed paper

**in capsulis amylaceis** – in starch capsules

**in ampullis** – in ampules

**Da tales doses** – give out such doses

**Dentur tales doses** – lets such doses will be given

**Divide in partes equales numero ...** – divide in equal parts number ...

**Misce, fiat mixture** – mix to make mixture

**Misce, fiat solutio** – mix to make solution

**Misce, ut fiant massa pillularum** – mix to make pills mass

In part of prescription *Designatio materiarum* is used preposition **ad** –t o.

Recipe: Ichthyoli 1,25

Zinci oxyde

Amyli Tritici ana 12,5

Vaselini **ad** 50

Misce, fiat pasta

Da. Signa:

## **II. Prepositions phrases which means the way of use of medical preparations:**

**per os** – through mouth

**per rectum** – rectal

**per vaginam** – vaginal

**intra musculos** – intramuscularly

**sub linguam** – sublingually

**sub cutem** – subcutaneously

**retro buccam** – by the cheek

**per injectionem** – by injections

**per aspersionem** – by powder

**per inhalationem** – by inhalation

## **III. Prepositions in special pharmaceutical phrases:**

**ad usum internum** – for internal use

**ad usum externum** – for external use

**pro injectionibus** – for the injections

**pro aspersione** – for powder

**pro inhalatione** – for inhalation

**pro cataplasmate** – for poultice

**pro gargarismate** – for rinsing

**pro balneis** – for bath

**pro narcosi** – for anesthesia

**pro dosi** – for a dose

**pro infantibus** – for children

**pro me** – for me

**pro roentgeno** – for X-ray

**in vivo** – in living organism

**in vitro nigro** - in dark bottle

**contra tussim** – against cough

**contra rabiem** – against rabies

**contra odontalgiam** – against toothache

**pro die** – for a day

**contra scabiem** – against scabies

**ex tempore** – as it necessary

### Exercises

#### 1. Translate phrases into English:

Infusum rhizomatum cum radicibus Valerianae; suppositoria cum extracto Belladonnae; pulvis Ampicillini pro suspensione; suppositoria cum Dimedrolo pro infantibus; aether pro narcosi; tabulettae contra tussim; Trichloraethylenum pro narcosi; elixir cum extracto Glycyrrhizae.

#### 2. Write terms with prepositions in Latin:

Rectal, through mouth, sublingually, by inhalation, intramuscularly, rectal, by powder, vaginal, subcutaneously, by powder, by inhalation.

#### 3. Insert the missed prepositions:

... tussim; ...me; ...infantibus; ...buccam; ...injectionibus; ...vivo; ...tempore; ...vaginam; ... roentgeno; ... os; ... rabiem; ... rectum; ... dosi; ... scabiem; ... usum externum; ... balneis; ... odontalgiam; ... vitro nigro; ... pertussim.

**4. Translate prescription phrases into English:**

1. Dentur tales doses numero 20.
2. Divide in partes equales.
3. Misce, ut fiat pulvis subtilissimus.
4. Vaccinum contra rabiem.
5. Da in tabulettis obductis.
6. Misce, fiant species.
7. Misce, ut fiat suppositorium rectale.
8. Detur in charta cerata.
9. Solutio Camphorae oleosa ad usum externum.
10. Detur in vitro nigro.

**5. Translate phrases into Latin:**

1. Herb collection for inhalation.
2. Syrup of currant for children.
3. Ether for anesthesia.
4. Aromatic salt for bath.
5. Analgin in tablets.
6. Extract of stramonium in dark bottle.
7. Cod liver oil in capsules.
8. Pancreatin in coated tablets.
9. Solution of Papaverin for the injections.

## **Unit 30**

**Theme: Revision test.**

**Task 1. Translate following pharmaceutical terms:**

Concentrated sulfuric acid; basic carbonate of magnesium; infusion of roots of Althaea; soluble Furagin; solution of glucose; fresh aloe juice; rectal suppositories with Ichthyol; camphor oil; flowers of matricary; waterless lanolin; burn magnesia; peach oil; besiege sulfur; crushed bark of buckthorn; calcium chloride in pills; serum against diphtheria; flowers of spring Adonis; reduced iron; sodium chloride; medical potash soap (green); atropine sulfate in capsules; benzoic acid; liquid extract of aloe; solutions for injections; coated tablets of valerian extract; zinc oxide; simple syrup or sugar syrup.

**Task 2. Translate pharmaceutical phrases into Latin:**

- |                       |                            |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. for suspension     | 16. during the hour        |
| 2. for compress       | 17. from berries           |
| 3. in covered tablets | 18. without water          |
| 4. for children       | 19. against angina         |
| 5. in pure form       | 20. in gelatinous capsules |
| 6. for baths          | 21. against cough          |

7. single dose
8. for injections
9. for external use
10. Let it be given out such doses
11. in waxed paper
12. septically
13. immediately
14. in dark bottle
15. Divide into equal parts
22. in sufficient amount
23. in ampoules
24. of each
25. dose for a day
26. for peroral use
27. for inhalation
28. in a bottle
29. Mix up, to make pill mass
30. for me

#### LATIN - ENGLISH VOCABULARY

### A

**abscessus, us m** abscess  
**absorbens, entis** absorbent  
**Absinthium, ii n** wormwood sage brush  
**Acacia, ae f** acacia  
**acetas, ātis m** acetate  
**acetōnum, i n** acetone  
**acetum, i n** vinegar  
**acetylsalicylicus, a, um** acetylsalicylic  
**Achillea millefolium (bot.)** common yarrow  
**acidum, i n** acid  
**acidum aceticum** acetic acid  
**acidum acetylsalicylicum** acetylsalicylic acid  
**acidum arsenicum** arsenic acid  
**acidum ascorbinicum** ascorbic acid  
**acidum benzoicum** benzoic acid  
**acidum boricum** boric acid  
**acidum carbonicum** carbonic acid  
**acidum citricum** citric acid  
**acidum folicum** folic acid  
**acidum hydrocyanicum** hydrocyanic acid  
**acidum hydrosulfuricum** hydrosulfuric acid  
**acidum lacticum** lactic acid  
**acidum lipoicum** lipoic acid  
**acidum nicotinicum** nicotinic acid  
**acidum nitricum** nitric acid  
**acidum phosphoricum** phosphoric acid  
**acidum salicylicum** salicylic acid  
**acidum sulfuricum** sulfuric acid  
**aconitum, i n** aconitine  
**activatus, a, um** activated

**acus, us m** needle  
**adeps, adipis m,f** fat, lard  
**adeps lanae** wool fat  
**adiposus, a, um** fat  
**Adōnis, īdis m** adonis  
**Adonis vernalis** spring Adonis  
**ad** up to  
**ad (Acc.)** for  
**addo, ēre 3** to add  
**adhaesīvus, a, um** sticky, adhesive  
**adjuvans, ntis** subsidiary, adjvant  
**Adrenalinum, i n** adrenalin  
**adstrigens, ntis** astringent  
**adultus, a, um** adult  
**ad usum externum** to be taken externally (= for external use)  
**ad usum internum** to be taken internally (= for internal use)  
**ad usum parenterālem** to be taken parenterally (=for parenteral use)  
**ad usum proprium** for his(her) own (personal) use  
**ad usum veterinarium** for veterinary use  
**ad vitrum** into the bottle  
**adultus, a, um** adult  
**aegrōtus, i m** sick  
**aequalis, e** equal  
**aer, aeris m** air  
**aērosolum, i n** aerosol  
**aetas, ātis f** age  
**Aethacridīnum, i n** ethacridine  
**Aethazolum, i n** etazol  
**Aethazōlum-natrium, i n** ethazol sodium

- aether, ēris m** ether  
**aethereus, a, um** ethereal  
**aethylicus, a, um** ethylic  
**Aethyl, -ylis n** ethyl  
**aequalis, e** equal  
**albumen, -inis n** albumen  
**albus, a, um** white  
**alcaloidum, i n** alkaloid  
**aldehydum, i n** aldehyde  
**allergicus, a um** allergic  
**alga, ae f** see weed  
**Allium, i n** garlic  
**Allium sativum**(bot.) garlic  
**Alnus, i f** alder  
**Allocholum, i n** allochol  
**Aloë, ēs f** aloe  
**Althaea, ae f** althea, marsh-mallow  
**Althaea officinalis** Marsh-mallow  
**Alumen, inis n** alum  
**Alumen ustum** burnt alum  
**Aluminium, i n** aluminum  
**amārus, a, um** bitter  
**amīcus, i m** friend  
**Amidopyrinum, i n** amydopyrin  
**Ammonium, i n** ammonium  
**Ammonii carbonas m** ammonium  
**amphora, ae f** jar  
**ampulla, ae f** ampoule  
**ampullaris, e** ampillary  
**Amylii nitris** amylnitrite  
**Amylum, i n** starch  
**Amygdala, ae f** almond fruit  
**Amygdala amara** bitter almond  
**Amygdala dulcis** sweet almond  
**Amygdalus, i f** the almond tree  
**ana** equally, in equal parts  
**Anaesthesinum, i n** anaesthesia  
**Anaesthesōlum, i n** anaesthesia  
**anaestheticus, a, um** anesthetic  
**analgeticus, a, um** analgetic  
**anatomicus, a, um** anatomical  
**anatoxinum, i n** toxoid  
**anatoxinum tetanicum** toxoid tetanus  
**Anēthum, i n** dill  
**angīna, ae f** quinsy, tonsillitis  
**anhydričus, a, um** anhydrous  
**animal, ālis n** animal  
**Anīsum, i n** anise  
**ante (Acc.)** before (time), in front of
- anthelminticus, a, um** against worms  
**antiasthmaticus, a, um** antiasthmatic  
**antidiphthericus, a, um** antidiphtheric  
**antidotum, i n** antidote  
**antidotum metallorum** antidote by metal poisoning  
**antimonium, i n** antimony  
**antiphlogisticus, a, um** anti-inflammatory  
**Antipyrinum, i n** antipyrin  
**antitetanicus, a , um** against tetanus  
**aperiens, ntis** aperient  
**apis, is f** a bee  
**Apomorphīnum, i n** apomorphine  
**apparatus, us m** apparatus  
**application, ūnis f** application  
**aqua, ae f** water  
**aqua adstricta** ice water  
**aqua aerata** carbonated water  
**aqua bulliens** boiling water  
**aqua destillata** distilled water  
**aqua fervens** warm water  
**aqua fontata** spring water  
**aqua pro injectione** water for the injection  
**aqua purificata** purified water  
**aquōsus, a, um** waterless  
**arabicus, a, um** arabic  
**Arachis, is** peanut  
**arbor, ūris f** tree  
**arborescens, ntis** dendritic  
**Argentum, i n** silver  
**Argilla, ae f** white clay  
**Armeniaca, ae f** apricot  
**Arnica, ae** arnica  
**aromaticus, a, um** fragrant, aromatic  
**ars, artis f** art  
**Arsenicum , i n** arsenic  
**arsenicōsus, a, um** arsenous  
**arvensis, e** field  
**ascorbinīcus, a, um** ascorbic  
**Asellus, i m** cod fish  
**aseptice** aseptically  
**aspersio, ūnis f** powder  
**Aspirīnum, i n** aspirin  
**Atropa belladonna** (bot.) belladonna  
**Atropīnum, i n** atropine  
**auctor, ūris m** author  
**audio, īre 4** to listen  
**Aurantium, i n** orange  
**Aurum, i n** gold

**axungia, ae f** lard  
**axungia porcina** lard

## B

**bacca, ae f** berry  
**bacillus, i m** bacillus  
**bacterialis, e** bacterial  
**bactericidus, a, um** bactericide  
**bacterium, i n** bacterium  
**balneum, i n** bath  
**balsamicus, a, um** balsamic  
**balsamum, i n** balsam  
**Barium, i n** barium  
**Belladonna, ae f** belladonna  
**bene** well  
**benzoas, atis m** benzoate  
**benzoicus, a, um** benzoic  
**Berberis, idis f** berberis, Oregon grape root  
**Berberis vulgaris (bot.)** barberry  
**Betula, ae f** birch  
**Barbitalum-natrium, i n** Barbital-sodium  
**Barium, i n** barium  
**benzoas, atis m** benzoate  
**Benzylum, i n** benzyl  
**Benzylpenicillinum-kalium, i n**  
    benzylpenicillin potassium  
**bibo, ēre 3** to drink  
**bicarbonas, atis m** bicarbonate  
**Bidens, ntis f** squatina  
**biopharmaceutica, ae f** study of physical and  
    chemical properties of medicinal substances  
**bis** twice  
**Bismuthum, i n** bismuth  
**bolus, i f** clay, large pill  
**bonus, a, um** good  
**Borax, boracis f** borax  
**boricus, a, m** boric  
**bos, bovis m** ox  
**Brassica nigra (bot.)** mustard  
**brevis, e** short  
**bromidum, i n** bromide  
**Bromisovalum, i n** bromysoval  
**Bromium, i n** bromine  
**Broncholytinum, i n** broncholytin  
**bulla, ae f** bulla, blister  
**bulliens, ntis** boiling  
**Bursa pastoris** shepherd's purse  
**butyrum, i n** butter (hurd)

## C

**Cacao (indecl.)** cocoa  
**caeruleus, a, um** blue  
**Calamus, i m** reed, calamus  
**Calcium, i n** calcium  
**Calendula, ae f** calendula  
**calidus, a, um** hot  
**calx, calcis f** lime  
**Camphora, ae f** camphora  
**camphorātus, a, um** camphoric  
**Cantharis, idis f** cantharides  
**capillus, i m** hair  
**Capsicum, i n** pepper  
**capsūla, ae f** capsule  
**capsula amylacea** starch capsule  
**carbonas, atis m** carbonate  
**Carboneum, i n** carbone  
**Cardamonum, i n** cardamon  
**cardiacus, a, um** cardiac  
**carminatīvus, a, um** against flatulence  
**Carum, i n** dear  
**Cassia, ae f** senna  
**cataplasma, atis n** compress, plegket, poultice  
**catharticus, a, um** cathartic  
**caulis, is m** stems  
**causticus, a, um** caustic  
**caute** carefully  
**Centaurea, ae f** cornflower  
**cera, ae f** wax  
**Cerasus, i f** cherry-tree  
**Cerasum, i n** cherry  
**ceratus, a, um** wax-coated, cerated  
**Cerebrolysinum, i n** cerebrolysin  
**Ceteris paribus** the rest being equal  
**charta, ae** chart, paper  
**chartaceus, a, um** papery  
**Chamomilla, ae f** matricary  
**Chelidonium, i n** celandine; bloodworm  
**Chenopodium, i n** chenopodium, American  
    wormseed  
**chinensis, e** chinese  
**chloridum, i n** chloride  
**Chloroformium, i n** chloroform  
**Chlorum, i n** chlorine  
**chole, es f** bile  
**cibus, i m** food  
**Cimicifuga, ae f** black cohosh, cimicifuga  
**Cinchona, ae f** quinine  
**cinereus, a, um** grey

**cinnamomum, i n** cinnamon  
**cito** quickly, urgently  
**citissime** very quickly  
**citras, atis m** citrate  
**citricus, a, um** citric  
**Citrus limon (bot.)** lemon  
**Codeinum, i n** codeine  
**coeruleus, a, um** blue  
**colo, āre 1** to strain  
**color, ūris m** color  
**coloro, āre 1** to color  
**collagenicus, a, um** collagen  
**Collodium, i n** collodium  
**combustus, a, um** burned  
**complicatus, a, um** complicated  
**compressus, a, um** compressed  
**compositus, a, um** complex, compound  
**commūnis, e** common  
**concentratus, a, um** concentrated  
**concido, ēre 3** to cut  
**concissus, a, um** chopped  
**confectio, ūnis f** confection  
**convergens, ntis** convergent  
**conservatus, a, um** preserved  
**conspingo, ēre 3** to dust thoroughly  
**contagiosus, a, um** contagious  
**conto, ēre 3** to triturate  
**contra (prep. with Acc.)** against  
**contra rabiem** against rabies  
**(con)tritus, a, um** rubbed  
**contūsus, a, um** bruised  
**Convallaria, ae f** lily of the valley  
**coquo, ēre 3** to boil  
**Cordiaminum, i n** cordiamin  
**Cordigitum, i n** kordigit  
**Corglycōnum, i n** corglycon  
**Coriandrum, i n** coriander  
**cornu, us n** horn  
**corpus, oris n** body  
**corrigens, ntis** corrective  
**cortex, icis m** cortex, bark, peel  
**Crataegus, i f** hawthorn  
**creta, ae f** chalc  
**cremor, oris m** cream  
**crystallisātus, a, um** crystalized  
**cucumis, cucumeris m** cucumber  
**Cucurbita, ae f** pumpkin  
**cum (Abl.)** with  
**Cuprum, i n** cooper

**curo, are 1** to treat, heal  
**Cyanocobalamīnum, i n** cyanocobalamin

## D

**decoctum, i n** decoction  
**decoctum fructuum** fruit decoction  
**decoloratus, a, um** decolorized  
**decorticatus, a, um** pilled from bark  
**decubitus, us m** bedsore, decubitus  
**demulcens, entis** demulcent, softening  
**deodoratus, a, um** deodorized  
**depurātus, a, um** pilled  
**desinfectio, ūnis f** desinfection  
**destillatus, a, um** distillatory  
**detergens, entis** cleansing  
**dexter, tra, trum** right  
**Dibazolum, i n** dibazol  
**Dibiomyčīnum, i n** dibiomycine  
**Dicaīnum, i n** dicain  
**dies, ei m** day  
**difficilis, e** difficult  
**Digitalis, is f** foxglove, digitalis  
**dilūtus, a, um** diluted  
**Dimedrolum, i n** dimedrol  
**Dioxidum, i n** dioxide  
**Diprophyllinum, i n** diprophyllin  
**dispenso, āre 1** to dispense  
**diureticus, a, um** diuretic  
**divergens, ntis m** divergent  
**dividendus, a, um** to be divided  
**divido, ēre 3** to divide  
**depurātus, a, um** purified  
**derma, atis n** skin  
**desinfectio, ere** disinfect  
**desinfectio, ūnis f** disinfectio  
**destillatus, a, um** distilled  
**destillo āre 1** distill  
**divisus, a, um** dividet  
**do, dare 1** to give  
**dosis, is f** dose  
**dragées** drops  
**ductilis, e** plastic  
**dulcis, e** sweet  
**durus, a, um** hard  
**dyspepsia, ae f** impairment of digestion

## E

**Echinacea purpurea (bot.)** purple coneflower  
**Echinopānax, acis n** aralia

**effectus, us m** effect  
**effervescens** (adj.) effervescent  
**elixir, iris n** elixir  
**emolliens, entis** softening  
**emplastrum, i n** plaster  
**emulgens, entis** emulsifying  
**emulsum, i n** emulsion  
**endocrinus, a, um** endocrine  
**entericus, a, um** enteric, pertaining to the intestines  
**enterosolubilis, e** enteric soluble  
**Ephedra, ae f** ephedra  
**Ephedrinum, i n** ephedrin  
**Equisentum, i n** horse-tail; shave-grass  
**Ergota, ae f** ergot  
**Ergotalum, i n** ergotal  
**Erycyclīnum, i n** erycycline  
**Erynitum, i n** erynit  
**Erythrophosphatīdum, i n** erythrophosphatide  
**essentia, ae f** essence  
 et and  
**Ethanolum, i n** ethanol  
**Eucalyptus, i f** eucalypt  
**Euphyllīnum, i n** euphylline  
**ex (Abl.)** from, of  
**exacte** exactly  
**excicatus, a, um** dried  
**expectorans, antis** expectorant  
**expressus, a, um** expressed  
**exsiccatus, a, um** dried  
**extendo, ēre 3** to extend  
**externus, a, um** external  
**extensus, a, um** plastered, spread  
**extractum, i n** extract  
**extraho, ēre 3** to extract

## F

**facies, ēi f** face  
**Farfara, ae f** coltsfoot  
**farina, ae f** flour, meal  
**fasciculus, i m** packet  
**febris, is f** fever  
**fel, fellis n** bile  
**felleus, a, um** of gall  
**fermentatus, a, um** fermented  
**fermentum, i n** yeast  
**Ferrum, i n** iron  
**fervens, ntis** hot  
**Fibrolysinum, i n** fibrolysin

**Ficus, us f** fig  
**Filix, icis f** fern  
**Filix mas (Filicis maris)** male fern  
**filtro, āre 1** filter, filtrate  
**finio, īre 4** to finish  
**fio, fiēri 3** become  
**flaco, ūnis m** phial  
**flavus, a, um** yellow  
**flos, floris m** flower  
**fluidus, a um** liquid  
**Fluorum, i n** fluorine  
**Foeniculum, i n** fennel  
**foetidus, a, um** fetid  
**folicus, a, um** folic  
**folium, i n** leaf  
**fons, fontis m** fountain, spring  
**fontanus, a, um** spring (of water)  
**forma, ae f** form, shape  
**formaldehydūm, i n** formaldehyde  
**formandus, a, um** to be formed  
**formo, āre 1** to form  
**formula, ae f** formula, rule  
**fortis, e** strong  
**fragrans, ntis** fragrant  
**Frangula, ae f** buckthorn  
**frictio, ūnis f** friction  
**fructus, us m** fruit  
**fumans, antis** fuming  
**Furacillinum, i n** furacillin  
**Furazolidonum, i n** furazolidon  
**fuscus, a, um** brown  
**fusus, a, um** moulded, melted  
**G**  
**Galanthaminum, i n** galanthamin sunflower  
**gargarisma, ātis n** garling water, gargle  
**gaster, tris f** stomach  
**Gaultheria, ae f** wintergreen  
**gelatinosus, a, um** gelatinous  
**gelatinum, i n** gelatin  
**gemma, ae f** bud  
**Gentiana, ae f** gentian  
**genus, genēris n** genus  
**Ginseng (indecl.)** ginseng  
**Geranium, i n** geranium, cranesbill  
**glacialis, e** icy  
**glacies, ei f** ice  
**glandula, ae f** gland  
**globulus, i m** globule  
**gluconas, atis m** gluconate

**Glucōsum, i n** glucose  
**glutaminicus, a, um** glutaminic  
**glycerinosus,a,um** glyceric  
**Glycerinum, i n** glyceryn  
**Glycerolum, i n** glycerine  
**Glycinum, i n** glicin  
**Glycosidum, i n** glycoside  
**Glycyramum, i n** glycyram  
**Glycyrrhiza, ae f** licorice  
**Gossypium, i n** cotton wool  
**granulatus, a, um** granulated  
**granūlum, i n** granule  
**graveolens, entis** strong smelling  
**gummi, n (indecl.)** gum  
**gummi Armeniacae** apricot gum  
**gustatorius, a, um** taste (+noun)  
**gustus, us m** taste  
**gutta, ae f** drop (of liquid)

## H

**Hamamelis, idis f** witch hazel, hamamelis  
**Haemophobinum, i n** haemophobin  
**haemostaticus, a, um** haemostatic  
**haustus, us m** drink, draught  
**Helianthus, i m** sunflower  
**Helichrysum, i n** immortelle  
**hepar, atis n** liver  
**hepaticus, a, um** hepatic  
**herba, ae f** herb, grass  
**Hippophae, es f** sea buckthorn  
**hirūdo, inis f** leech  
**hora, ae f** hour  
**Humulus lupulus (bot.)** hop  
**Hydrargyrum, i n** mercury  
**hydrobromidum, i n** hydrobromide  
**hydrocarbonas, atis m** hydrocarbonate  
**hydrochloricus, a, um** hydrochloric  
**hydrochloridum, i n** hydrochloride  
**hydrocyanicus, a, um** hydrocyanic  
**hydroiodidum, i n** hydroiodide  
**Hydrocortisōnum, i** hydrocortisone  
**Hydrogenium, i n** hydrogen  
**Hydrotartras, atis m** hydrotartrate  
**hydroxidum, i n** hydroxide  
**Hyoscyamus, i m** henbane  
**Hypericum, i n** Aaron's beard (herb)  
St. John's wort  
**hypertonicus, a, um** hypertonic

## I

**Ichthyolum, i n** ichtyol  
**in (Abl.) in**  
**in charta cerata** in cerated paper  
**induratus, a, um** hardened  
**infans, ntis m, f** child  
**infundo, ēre 3** to infuse, to pour in  
**infusum, i n** infusion  
**inhalation, ūnis f** inhalation  
**injectabilis, e** injectable  
**injectio, ūnis f** injection  
**inspergo, ēre 3** to sprinkle upon  
**internus, a, um** internal  
**intramuscularis, e** into the muscle  
**intranasalis, e** intranasal  
**intratrachealis, e** intratracheal  
**intravenōsus, a, um** intravenous  
**iodidum, i n** iodide  
**Iodum, i n** iodine  
**Ipecacuanha, ae f** ipecac  
**iris, idis f** iris  
**isotonicus, a,um** isotonic

## J

**Jasminum, i n** jasmine  
**jecur, oris n** liver of sea fish  
**Juniperus, i a** juniper

## K

**Kalanchoe, es f** calanchoe  
**Kalium, i n** potassium  
**Keratinum, i n** keratin  
**Krameria, ae f** rhatany

## L

**lac, lactis n** milk  
**lactas, ātis m** lactate  
**lacticus, a, um** lactic  
**lagēna, ae f** bottle  
**lamella, ae f** film (ophthalmic)  
**lamella ophthalmica** ophthalmic film  
**Laminaria, ae f** sea weed  
**Lana, ae f** wool  
**latex, laticis m** milk-juice  
**latus, a, um** wide  
**Laurus, i f** bay leaf, laurel  
**Lavandula, ae f** lavender  
**laxans, ntis** purge, laxative

**Ledum, i n** rosemary  
**lente** slowiy (the action)  
**Leonūrus, i m** motherwort  
**Leptandra, ae f** leptandra, Culver's root  
**levis, e** light (in weight)  
**Limon, onis f** a lemon  
**linimentum, i n** liniment  
**Linum, i n** flax  
**Linum usitatissimum** flaxseed  
**lipoicus, a, um** lipoic  
**lipos, i m** oil  
**liquefactus, a, um** liquefied  
**liquidus, a, um** liquid  
**liquor, ōris m** liquid  
**liquor Ammonii caustici** liquid ammonia  
**liquor Ammonii anisatus** ammonia-anise drops  
**liquor seriparus** liquid rennet  
**Lithium, i n** lithium  
**longe** extremely  
**lotion, ūnis f** lotion  
**luteus, a, um** yellow  
**lux, lucis f** light  
**lycopodium, i n** lycopodium, vegetable sulphur

## M

**Magnesium, i n** magnesium  
**Magnium, i n** magnesium  
**majalis, e** may  
**Maltum, i n** malt  
**malus, a, um** bad  
**Malus domestica (bot.)** apple  
**mane** in the morning  
**Manganum, i n** manganese  
**maritimus, a, um** maritime  
**mas, maris m** male  
**mascero, āre 1** to soak  
**massa, ae f** mass  
**massa pilularum** pills mass  
**materia, ae f** material  
**Matricaria, ae f** camomille  
**maximus, a, um** largest, greatest  
**medicamentum, i n** medicament  
**medicatus, a, um** medicated  
**medicinalis, e** medical  
**medius, a, um** middle sized, medium  
**medulla, ae f** pith, marrow  
**mel, mellis n** honey

**Melissa, ae f** Melissa (herb)  
**membranūla, ae f** film  
**membranula ophthalmica, ae f** ophthalmic film  
**Mentha, ae f** mint  
**Mentha piperita** peper mint  
**Mentha pulegium** pennyroyal  
**Menthae viridis** spearmint  
**Mentholum, i n** menthol  
**Menyanthes, is f** the bogbean  
**Methylēnum, i n** methylene  
**Methylenum coeruleum** blue methylene  
**Methylium, i n** methyl  
**Methylili salicylas** methylsalicilate  
**Millefolium, i n** yarrow  
**mineralis, e** mineral  
**minimus, a, um** minim  
**minutim** small, into small particles  
**misceo, ēre 2** mix  
**mitis, e** weak ( in action)  
**mixtura, ae f** mixture  
**mixtio pro potionē** mixture for drinking  
**mollis, e** soft  
**morbus, i, m** disease  
**Morphinum, i n** morphine  
**morphinatus, a, um** morphinate  
**mucilāgo, ūnis f** mucilage, liquid containing mucous substances  
**mucosus, a, um** mucosal  
**multus, a, um** many, much  
**modice** moderately  
**mollis, e** soft  
**Mycoseptinum, i n** mycoseptin  
**Myrrha, ae f** myrrh  
**Myrtillum, i n** mirth

## N

**Naphthalānum, i n** naphthalan  
**narcōsis, is f** narcosis  
**nasoguttae** nasal drops  
**nasus, i m** nose  
**Natrium, i n** sodium  
**naturalis, e** natural  
**nebula, ae f** spray  
**Neomycinum, i n** neomycin  
**nicotinicuś, a, um** nicotinic  
**niger, gra, grum** black  
**nitras, atis m** nitrate  
**nitris, itis m** nitrite

**Nitrogenium, i n** nitrogen  
**Nitroglycerinum, i n** nitroglycerine  
**nivalis, e** of snow  
**nomen, īnis n** name  
**Norsulfazōlum, i n** norsulphazol  
**Novocainum, i n** Novocain  
**nox, noctis f** night  
**nocte** at night, in the night  
**Nufar, aris n** water lily, nenuphar  
**numerus, i m** number  
**nutriens, entis** nourishing  
**nutrio, ire 4** to feed  
**Nux, nucis f** nut  
**Nux vomica; nucis vomicae** nux vomica,  
 Quaker button

## O

**obduco, ēre 3** to coat  
**obductus, a, um** coated  
**obliquus, a, um** oblique  
**obturatus, a, um** stoppered  
**octarius, i m** pint  
**oculoguttae** eye drops  
**oculus, i m** eye  
**odor, ūris m** odor  
**Oestradiōlum, i n** oestradiol  
**officīna, ae f** chemist's, drug store  
**officinalis, e** medicinal  
**olla, ae f** galipot  
**oleosaccharum, i n** oilshugar  
**oleosus, a, um** oily, in an oil  
**oleum, i n** oil  
**oleum gaultheriae** oil of wintergreen  
**oleum gynocardiae** chaulmugra oil  
**oleum morrhuae** cod liver oil  
**oleum Menthae piperitae** oil of peppermint  
**oleum pini pumilionis** dwarf pine oil  
**oleum Pini sylvestris** fir-wool oil  
**oleum jecoris Aselli** cod liver oil  
**oleum Olivarum** olive oil  
**oleum Persicorum** peach oil  
**oleum Phocae** seal oil  
**oleum Ricini** castor oil  
**oleum Succīni rectificatum** rectified oil of  
 amber  
**oleum Theobromatis** cacao-butter  
**oleum Terebinthinae** turpentine oil  
**Oliva, ae f** olive  
**Olus, ēris n** cabbage

**omentum, i n** the caul, adipose membrane  
**operculatus, a, um** closed by tap  
**ophthalmicus, a, um** ophthalmic  
**Opium, i n** opium  
**optime** in the best way  
**optimus, a, um** best  
**ordinarius, a, um** ordinary  
**Origanum vulgare (bot.)** oregano  
**orōtas, ātis m** orotate  
**Oryza, ae f** rice  
**os, oris n** mouth  
**os, ossis n** bone  
**otoguttae** ear drops  
**ovum, i n** an egg  
**Oxycoccus, i m** cranberry  
**oxýdum, i n** oxide  
**Oxygenium, i n** oxygen

## P

**paluster, tris, tre** swampy, uliginous  
**páncreas, atis f** páncreas  
**Pancreatinum, i n** pancreatin  
**Papaver, eris n** poppy  
**Papaverinum, i n** papaverin  
**Papaver somniferum (bot.)** opium poppy  
**Paraffinum, i n** paraffin  
**Paraffinum durum** hard paraffin  
**Paraffinum molle álbum** white soft paraffin  
**Paraldehydum, i n** paraldehyde  
**parenterālis, e** parenteral  
**pars, partis f** part  
**parvus, a, um** small  
**pasta, ae f** paste, thick ointment  
**pastillus, i m** pastile  
**pectorālis, e** pectoral  
**pectus, ūris n** chest  
**Pepo, ūnis m** pepo, pumpkin  
**Pepsinum, i n** pepsin  
**per (Acc)** through, via (preposition with  
 Accus.)  
**percolatus, a, um** percolated, strained through  
**percolo, are 1** to percolate  
**permanganas, atis m** permanganate  
**peroralis, e** administered through the, oral  
**peroxýdum, i n** peroxide  
**Persicum, i n** peach  
**Persio, onis f** cudbear  
**peruvianus, a, um** peruvian  
**petrolatum, i n** petrolatum, vaseline

**pharmaceuticus, a, um** pharmaceutical  
**pharmacotherapia, ae f** pharmaceutical therapy  
**Phenacetinum, i n** phenacetin  
**Phenobarbitalum, i n** phenobarbital  
**Phenoxyethylpenicillinum, i n**  
 phenoxyethylpenicillin  
**Phenylum, i n** phenyl  
**Phenylii salicylas** phenylsalicylate  
**Phoca, ae f** a seal  
**Phosphas, atis m** phosphate  
**Phosphorus, i m** phosphorus  
**phosphoricus, a, um** phosphoric  
**Phthalazolum, i n** phthalazol  
**Phthivazidum, i n** phthivazid  
**Phthorum, i n** fluorine  
**physis** (Greek) grow  
**Phytinum, i n** phytin  
**phytotherapia, ae f** treatment by means of medical plants  
**pigmentum, i n** pigment  
**Pila, ae f** (i long) a mortar  
**Pila, ae f** (i short) a ball  
**Pilae gossypii absorbentis** pads of cotton wool  
**Pilocarpinum, i n** pilocarpine  
**pilula, ae f** pill, small ball with a drag substance  
**pilus, i m** hair  
**pinguis, e** fatty, adipose  
**Pinus, i f** a pine tree  
**Pinus pumilio** the dwarf-pine  
**Pinus silvestris** the Scotch fir  
**Piper, eris n** pepper  
**piperitus, a, um** peppery  
**Pirum, i n** pear  
**piscis, is m** fish  
**Pisum, i n** pea  
**pix, picis** resin, pitch  
**pix Burgundica** Burgundy pitch  
**pix carbonis praeparata** prepared coal-tar  
**picis carbonis liquor** solution of coal-tar  
**pix liquida** tar  
**placenta, ae f** a press cake  
**placenta seminis Lini** linseed-oil cake  
**planta, ae f** plant  
**Plantago, inis f** common(greated), plantain  
**plasma, atis n** plasma, nonfatty ointment  
**Platiphyllinum, i n** platiphylline

**Plumbum, i n** lead  
**Polygonum, i n** wáter pepper  
**polyvitaminosus, a, um** polyvitaminous  
**portio, onis f** a portion or dose  
**portionibus divisus** in divided doses  
**portionibus crebro adhibitis** in frequently repeated doses  
**portionibus exiguis** in small doses  
**portionibus magnis** in large doses  
**portionibus paribus** in equal doses  
**portionibus repetitis** in repeated doses  
**post** after (with Acc.)  
**post cibos** after meals  
**post meridiem** the afternoon  
**post prandium** after dinner  
**prae** before (with Abl.)  
**praecipitatus, a, um** precipitate  
**praeparo, are 1** to prepare  
**preparatio, onis f** preparation  
**praescribo, ère 3** to prescribe  
**prescriptio, onis f** prescription  
**Primula, ae f** primrose  
**primus, a, um** first  
**pro (Abl.)** for, before  
**pro adultis** for adults  
**pro balneo** for bath  
**pro die** for a day  
**pro dosi** for a dose  
**profundus, a, um** deep  
**pro infantibus** for children  
**pro injectionibus** for the injections  
**pro oculis** for eyes  
**proprius, a, um** proper, suitable  
**Prunus, i f** plum-tree  
**Prunum, i n** plum  
**pulvis, èris m** poder  
**pulveratus, a, um** powdery  
**pulvero, ère 1** to pulverise  
**pulvis subtilissimus** a very fine poder  
**purgans, ntis** purgative  
**purificatus, a, um** purified, cleaned  
**purpureus, a, um** purple  
**purus, a, um** clear, pure  
**Pyocidum, i n** pyocid  
**Pyridoxinum, i n** pyridoxine  
**Pyromecañum, i n** pyromecain  
**pixis, pixidis f** pill box  
**pixis chartacea** powder box

## **Q**

**quantum satis** in sufficient amount  
**quantum sufficiat** as much as suffices  
**quantus, a, um** as much as  
**quater** four times  
**quaque hora** every hour  
**quinina, ae f** quinine  
**quinquies** five times  
**Quercus, us f** oak

## **R**

**radix, īcis f** root  
**recens, ntis** fresh  
**recessus, us m** recess  
**recipio, ēre 3** to take  
**rectalis, e** rectal  
**rectificātus, a, um** rectified, cleared  
**rectum, i n** rectum  
**reductus, a, um** renovated, reduced  
**refrigo, āre 1** to cool  
**remedium , i n** medicament, pill,  
 remedy  
**remedium constituens** vehicle,  
 agent used as a solvent in the solution  
**rentgenum, i n** roentgenoscopy  
**repeto, ēre 3** to repeat  
**resina, ae f** resin  
**respiratorius, a, um** respiratory  
**Rhamnus, i f** buckthorn  
**Rheum, i n** rhubarb, pieplant  
**rhizōma, ātis n** rhizome  
**Ribes, is n** currant  
**Ribes nigrum** the black currant  
**Ribes rubrum** the red currant  
**Riboflavinum, i n** riboflavin  
**Ricinus, i m** castor oil plant  
**Rifathyroīnum, i n** rifathyroin  
**robورans, ntis** strengthening  
**Rosa, ae f** dog rose, wild rose  
**Rosmarinus, i m (Rosmarinus officinalis)** the  
 rosemary  
**Rubeola, ae f** rubeola, German measles  
**ruber, bra, brum** red  
**Rubus ideus, i m** raspberry plant  
**Rudis, is f** a spatula  
**Ruga, ae f** a wrinkle  
**Rumex, icis f** the dock  
**Ruta, ae f (Ruta grraveolens)** rue

## **S**

**Sabina, ae f (Juniperus sabinae)** the savin  
**Sabinae cacumina** savin tops  
**saccharum, i n** sugar  
**saccharum lactis** milk sugar, lactose  
**saccharum purificatum** refined sugar, sucrose  
**saccus, i m** bag  
**sacculus, i m** filter bag  
**scabies, ēi f** itch  
**scatula, ae f** box  
**Schizandra, ae f** schizandra  
**Sago, n (indecl.)** sago  
**sal, is m or n** salt  
**salicylas, ātis m** salicylate  
**Salmonellae typhi** typhoid vaccine  
**salus, salutis f** health  
**salicylas, atis m** salicylate  
**salicylicus, a, um** salicylic  
**salix, icis f** willow  
**Salvia, ae f** sage, clary  
**salveo, ēre 2** to be healthy, be well  
**sanguinaria, ae f** sanguinaria  
**scabies, ēi f** itch  
**Sambūcus, i f** elder  
**sano, āre 1** health  
**sanus, a, um** healthy  
**Saponaria, ae f** saponaria  
**Sarcolysinum, i n** sarcolysin  
**satis** enough  
**sativus, a, um** cultivated  
**Scammonium, i n** scammony  
**scatula, ae f** box  
**scilla, ae f** squill  
**Scopolaminum, i n** scopolamine  
**Secale, is n (Secale cornutum)** rye, spur of rye,  
 ergot  
**sed** but  
**sedativus, a, um** sedative  
**servo, are 1** to serve, conserve  
**seu** or  
**semel** once  
**semen, īnis n** seed  
**seminalis, e** seminal  
**semisolidus, a, um** half hard  
**Senna, ae f** senna  
**Senna Alexandria** Alexandrian senna  
**Senna Indica** East Indian or Tunnivelly  
 senna  
**sentio, īre 4** to see, feel, hear

<b>separo, āre 1</b>	to separate
<b>septicus, a, um</b>	septic
<b>seriparus, a, um</b>	cardled, curdling
<b>Serra, ae f</b>	a saw
<b>serum, i n</b>	serum
<b>serum antidiphthericum</b>	serum antidiphtheric
<b>serum antigangrenosum</b>	serum against gangrenous
<b>servo, āre 1</b>	1) to keep, preserve 2) to serve, conserve
<b>seu or</b>	
<b>Schizandra chinensis</b>	chinense magnolia
<b>Shepherd's purse</b>	Bursa pastoris
<b>siccatus, a, um</b>	dried
<b>siccō, āre 1</b>	to dry
<b>siccus, a, um</b>	dry
<b>siccatus, a, um</b>	dried
<b>signo, āre 1</b>	to sign
<b>Silicium, i n</b>	silicon
<b>silvester, tris, tre</b>	forest
<b>simplex, icis</b>	simple
<b>sinapis, is f</b>	mustard
<b>sine</b>	without
<b>Sinapis, is f</b>	mustard
<b>sine</b> (prepos. with Abl.)	without
<b>sinister, tra, trum</b>	left
<b>sirūpus, i m</b>	syrup
<b>Solanum tuberosum, i n</b>	potatoes
<b>solubilis, e</b>	soluble
<b>solutio, ōnis f</b>	solution
<b>solutio Ammonii (um, n)</b>	<b>caustici (us, um)</b> - liquid ammonia
<b>solutus, a, um</b>	dissolved
<b>solvo, ēre 3</b>	to solute, to dissolve
<b>somnifer, a, um</b>	narcotic, sleep-bringing
<b>sorbeo, ēre 2</b>	to swallow, to suck in
<b>Sorbus, i f</b>	rowan-tree
<b>Sorbus, i f</b>	ashberry
<b>spargo, ēre 3</b>	to sprinkle
<b>species, ērum f</b>	species
<b>species pectorales</b>	decoction to heal a cough
<b>species antiasthmaticaē</b>	antiasthmatic species
<b>species antihaemorrhoidales</b>	antihemorrhoidal species
<b>species aromaticaē</b>	aromatic species
<b>species cholagogae</b>	cholagogue species
<b>species diureticæ</b>	diuretic collection
<b>species laxantes</b>	purgative collection
<b>species pectorales</b>	pectoral species
<b>species stomachicaē</b>	gastric species
<b>spirituōsus, a, um</b>	spirituous
<b>spirītus, us m</b>	alcohol, spirit
<b>spiritus aetheris compositus</b>	compound spirit of ether, Hoffman's anodyne
<b>spiritus aetheris nitrosi</b>	spirit of nitrous ether, sweet spirit of nitre
<b>spiritus aethylicus</b>	ethyl spirit, ethyl alcohol
<b>spiritus ammoniae aromaticus</b>	aromatic spirit of ammonia, spirit of sal volatile
<b>spiritus camphoratus</b>	camphoric spirit, camphoric alcohol
<b>spiritus frumenti</b>	whisky
<b>spiritus glycerylis nitratis (U.S.P.)</b>	spirit of nitroglycerin
<b>spiritus Juniperi</b>	gin
<b>spiritus vini methylatus</b>	methylated spirit
<b>spissus, a, um</b>	thick
<b>spongia; ae f</b>	sponge
<b>spongiosus, a, um</b>	spongy, full of small holes
<b>spargens, ntis</b>	fizzing
<b>stabilis, e</b>	unchangeable, immovable
<b>stabilisatus, a, um</b>	stabilized
<b>statim</b>	immediately
<b>status, us m</b>	state
<b>status praesens</b>	present state
<b>sterilis, e</b>	sterile, aseptic
<b>sterilisatus, a, um</b>	sterilized
<b>steriliso, āre 1</b>	to sterilize
<b>Stibium, i n</b>	antimony
<b>sticky</b>	adhaesivus, a, um
<b>Stigma, ātis n</b>	stigma
<b>stilus, i m</b>	pencil
<b>stomachicus, a, um</b>	gastric
<b>stomacho vacuo (jejuno)</b>	on an empty stomach
<b>Stramonium, i n</b>	stramonium
<b>Streptocidum, i n</b>	streptocide
<b>stratum, i n</b>	a bad, a layer of anything
<b>strobilus, i m</b>	cone
<b>Strophanthinum, i n</b>	strophanthine
<b>Strychnos, i f (Nux vomica; nux, nucis f,</b>	strychnos seed vomicus, a, um)
<b>sub (prep. Abl.)</b>	under
<b>subacētas, ātis m</b>	basic acetate
<b>subcarbōnas, ātis m</b>	basic carbonate
<b>subcutaneus, a, um</b>	under the skin
<b>sublingualis, e</b>	sublingual

**subnītras, ātis m** basic ntrate  
**substantia, ae f** substance  
**subillis, e** shallow, shred, fine  
**subtilissimus, a, um** finest  
**Succīnum, i n** amber  
**succus, i m** juice  
**Sulfacylum, i n** sulfacyl  
**Sulfacylum-natrium, i n** sulpacyl sodium  
**Sulfadimezinum, i n** sulfadimezine  
**sulfas, ātis m** sulphate  
**Sulfur, ūris n** sulphur  
**sum, esse** to be  
**sumo, ēre 3** to take  
**suppositorium, i n** suppository  
**suspensio, ūnis f** suspension  
**Synthomycinum, i n** synthomycine  
**systema, ātis n** system

## T

**tabuletta, ae f** tablet  
**talis, e** such  
**tales doses** in such doses  
**Tanacetum, i n** tansy  
**Taraxacum, i n** dandelion  
**tartaricus, a, um** tartaric  
**tela, ae f** the cloth  
**ter** three times  
**Terebentīna, ae f** turpentine  
**teres, etis** round  
**terminus, i m** term  
**tero, ēre 3** to rub, triturate  
**tertius, a, um** the third  
**Testosterōnum, i n** testosterone  
**Tetracyclinum, i n** tetracyclin  
**Theobroma, ātis n** cocoa  
**Theobrominum-natrium, i n** theobromine sodium  
**Theophyllinum, i n** theophylline  
**Theophedrīnum, i n** theophedrin  
**Theophyllīnum, i n** theophylline  
**Thermopsis, idis f** thermopsis  
**Thymalīnum, i n** thymalin  
**Thyreoidīnum, i n** thyreoidin  
**thea, ae f** tea  
**Theophedrīnum, i n** theophedrin  
**Theophyllīnum, i n** theophylline  
**Thymalīnum, i n** thymalin  
**Thymus, i m** thyme  
**Thyreoidīnum, i n** thyreoidin

**Tilia, ae f** linden  
**tinctūra, ae f** tincture  
**tinctura stomachica** stomach tincture  
**tinctura rumicis** tincture of yellow dock root  
**tolu, n ( indecl.)** tolu  
**tome** cut  
**Tormentilla, ae f** bloodroot,web foot  
**transdermalis, e** transdermal  
**tritus, a, um** rubbed  
**turio, ūnis n** escape  
**tussis, is f** cough  
**tussis sicca** cough dry  
**tussis humida** cough moist

## U

**unguentum, i n** ointment  
**Urtīca, ae f** nettle  
**urinarius, a, um** urinary  
**urologicus, a, um** urological  
**ustus, a, um** burnt  
**usus, us m** use  
**utendus, a, um** to be used  
**Uva, ae f** grape  
**Uva (ae) ursi** bearberry

## V

**vaccinum antirabicum** vaccine against rabies  
**vaccinum gripposum** influenza vaccine  
**vaccinum pertussicum** pertussis vaccine  
**vaccinum tularemicum vivum** alive tularemia vaccine  
**vaccinium myrtillus (bot.)** bilberry  
**vaccinum variolae** smallpox vaccine  
**vaginālis, e** vaginal  
**valeo, ēre 3** to be healthy, be strong  
**Valeriāna, ae f** valerian  
**Validolum, i n** validol  
**Varicella, ae f** measles  
**vaselinum, i n** vaseline  
**vegetabilis, e** vegetable  
**vel** or  
**venenum, i n** poision  
**vernālis, e** existing in spring  
**verto, ēre 3** to turn, invert  
**Viburnum, i n** guelder-rose, black haw  
**Vinca, ae f** perwink  
**vinum, i n** wine  
**Vinyllinum, i n** vinilin  
**Viola, ae f** violet

**virginalis, e** virginal  
**viride nitens(viridis nitentis)** brilliant green  
**viridis, e** green  
**vita, ae f** life  
**vitamīnum, i n** vitamin  
**vitellus ovi** yolk of egg  
**Vitis ideae** cowberry  
**vitreus, a, um** vitreo  
**vitrum, i n** phial, glass  
**vivo, ēre 3** to live  
**vivus, a, um** alive, living  
**vomicus, a, um** ulcerous, filthy  
**vomitus, us m** vomiting  
**volatilis, e** volatile  
**vulgaris, e** plain, ordinary

## X

**Xeroformium, i n** xeroform

## Z

**Zea mays (bot.)** maize  
**Zingiber, eris n** ginger  
**Zincum, i n** zinc

# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

## A

**Aaron's bear (herb)** Hyericum, i n  
**abscess** abscessus, us m  
**absorbent** absorbens, ntis  
**acacia** Acacia, ae f  
**acetate** acetas, atis m  
**acetic** acetīcus, a um  
**acetic acid** acidum aceticum  
**acetone** acetonum, i n  
**acetylsalicylic** acetylsalicylicus, a, um  
**acetylsalicylic acid** acidum acetylsalicylicum  
**acid** acīdum, i n  
**aconitine** aconitimum, i n  
**activated** activatus, a, um  
**add** addo, ēre 3

**adhesive** adhaesivus, a, um  
**adipose** pinguis, e  
**adjvant** adjuvans, ntis  
**adonis** Adōnis, īdis m, f  
**adrenalin** Adrenalinum, i n  
**adult** adultus, i m; adultus, a, um  
**aerosol** aērōlum, i n  
**after** post  
**against** contra (prep. with Acc.)  
**against flatulence** carminativus, a, um  
**against rabies** contra rabiem  
**against tetanus** antitetanicus, a, um  
**against worms** anthelminticus, a, um  
**age** aetas, atis f  
**air** aēr, aēris m  
**albumen** albumen, inis n  
**alcaloid** alcaloidum, i n  
**alcohol** spiritus, us m  
**aldehyde** aldehydum, i n  
**alder** Alnus, i n  
**alive** vivus, a, um  
**aloe** Aloē, ēs f  
**allergic** allergicus, a, um  
**allochol** Allochōlum, i n  
**althea** Althaea, ae f  
**almond fruit** Amygdala, ae f  
**almond oil** oleum Amygdalarum  
**almond tree** Amygdalus, i f  
**alum** Alumen, īnis n  
**aluminium** Aluminium, i n  
**amidopyrin** Amidopyrīnum, i n  
**ammonia** solutio Ammonii caustici  
**ammonia-anise drops** liquor Ammonii  
**anisatus**  
**ammonium** Ammonium, i n  
**ampoule** ampulla, ae f  
**ampullary** ampullaris, e  
**amydopyrin** Amidopyrinum, i n  
**amylnitrite** Amylii nitris, itis  
**anaesthesia** Anaesthesia, i n  
**anaesthesol** Anaesthesolum, i n  
**analgetic** analgeticus, a, um  
**anatomical** anatomicus, a, um  
**anesthetic** anaestheticus, a, um  
**anhydrous** anhydricus, a, um  
**anise** Anisum, i n  
**anatomical** anatomicus, a, um  
**antiasthmatic** antiasthmaticus, a, um  
**antiasthmatic species** species antiasthmaticae

**antidiphtheric** antidiphthericus, a, um  
**antidote** antidotum, i n  
**antidote by metal poisoning** antidotum metallorum  
**antihemorroidal species** species antihaemorrhoidales  
**antiinflammatory** antiphlogisticus, a, um  
**antimony** antimonium, i n  
**antipyrin** Antipyrīnum, i n  
**antipyretic** antipyreticus, a, um  
**aperient** aperiens, ntis  
**apomorphine** Apomorphīnum, i n  
**apparatus** apparatus, us m  
**apple** Malus domestica (bot.)  
**apricot** Armeniaca, ae f  
**apricot gum** gummi Armeniacae  
**arabic** arabicus, a, um  
**aralia** Echinopanax, acis n, Aralia, ae f  
**arnica** Arnica, ae f  
**aromatic** aromaticus, a, um  
**aromatic species** species aromaticae  
**arsenic** Arsenicum, i n  
**arsenic acid** acidum arsenicosum  
**arsenous** arsenicosus, a, um  
**art** ars, artis f  
**artery** arteria, ae f  
**ascorbic** ascorbinīcus, a, um  
**ascorbinic acid** acidum ascorbinicum  
**aseptically** aseptice  
**ashberry** Sorbus, i f  
**aspirin** Aspirinum, i n  
**astringent** adstrigens, ntis  
**atropine** Atropinum, i n  
**audio, īre 4** to listen

## B

**bacillus** bacillus, i m  
**bacterial** bacterialis, e  
**bacterium** bacterium, i n  
**bad** malus, a, um  
**balsam** balsamum, i n  
**balsamic** balsamicus, a, um  
**barberry** Berberis vulgaris (bot.)  
**Barbital-sodium** Barbitalum-natrium, i n  
**barium** Barium, i n  
**bark** cortex, īcis m  
**basic acetate** subacētas, ātis m  
**basic carbonate** subcarbonas, ātis m  
**basic nitrate** subnītras, ātis m

**bath** balneum, i n  
**bay** Laurus, i m  
**be sum, esse**  
**bearberry** Uva (ae) ursi  
**bee** apis, is f  
**become** fio, fiēri 3 (factus)  
**bedsore, decubitus** decubitus, us m  
**before (time)** ante Acc.  
**belladonna** Belladonna, ae f  
**belladonna** Atropa belladonna (bot.)  
**benzoate** benzoas, ātis m  
**benzoic** benzoicus, a, um  
**benzoic acid** acidum benzoicum  
**benzyl** Benzylum, i n  
**benzylpenicillin potassium**  
Benzylpenicillinum-kalium, i n  
**berberis** Berberis, idis f  
**berry** bacca, ae f  
**best** optimus, a, um  
**bicarbonate** bicarbonas, ātis m  
**bilberry** Vaccinium myrtillus (bot.)  
**bile** chole, es f  
**birch** Betula, ae f  
**bismuth** Bismūthum, i n  
**bitter** amarus, a, um  
**bitter almond** Amygdala amara  
**black** niger, gra, grum  
**blackberry** Rubus, i m  
**bladder** vesica, ae f  
**bloodroot** Tormentilla, ae f  
**blue** coeruleus, a, um  
**blue methylene** Methylenum coeruleum  
**body** corpus, īris n  
**boil** coquo, īre 3  
**boiling** bulliens, ntis  
**boiling water** aqua bulliens  
**bone** os, ossis n  
**borax** Borax, acis f  
**boric** borīcus, a, um  
**boric acid** acidum boricum  
**bottle** vitrum, i n  
**bottle** lagena, ae f  
**box** scatula, ae f  
**brilliant green** Viride nitens (Viridis nitentis)  
**bromide** bromīdum, i n  
**bromine** bromum, i n  
**bromysoval** Bromisovalum, i n  
**broncholytin** Broncholytīnum, i n  
**brown** fuscus, a, um

**buckthorn** Frangula, ae f  
**bud** gemma, ae f  
**bulla, blister** bulla, ae f  
**burnt** ustus, a, um  
**burnt alum** Alumen ustum  
**butter (hurd)** butyrum, i n

## C

**Cacao** cacao  
**calamus, reed** Calamus, i m  
**calanchoe** Kalanchoe, es f  
**calcium** Calcium, i n  
**calendula** Calendula, ae f,  
**camphomen** “Camphomēnum”  
    (Camphomēnum, i n)  
**camphor** Camphōra, ae f  
**camphoric** camphorātus, a, um  
**camphoric spirit, camphoric alcohol** spiritus  
    camphoratus  
**cantharides** cantaris, idis f  
**capsicum** capsicum, i n  
**capsule** capsūla, ae f  
**carbonate** carbōnas, ātis m  
**carbonated water** aqua aerata  
**carbone** Carboneum, i n  
**carbonic acid** acidum carbonicum  
**cardamon** Cardamonum, i n  
**cardiac** cardiacus, a, um  
**carefully** caute  
**carminativus, a, um** against flatulence  
**castor oil** oleum Ricīni  
**cathartic** catharticus, a, um  
**caustic** causticus, a, um  
**cerebrolysin** Cerebrolysinum, i n  
**chalk** creta, ae f  
**chamomile** Chamomilla, ae f ; Matricaria, ae f  
**chart, paper** charta, ae f  
**chemist's** officina, ae f  
**chenopodium** Chenopodium, i n  
**cherry** Cerasum, i n  
**cherry-tree** Cerasus, i f  
**child** infans, ntis m  
**chinese** chinensis, e  
**chinense magnolia** Schizandra chinensis (bot)  
**chloride** Chloridum, i n  
**chlorine** Chlorum, i n  
**chloroform** Chloroformium, i n  
**cholagogue species** species cholagogae  
**chopped** concissus, a, um

**cleansing** detergens, entis  
**clear** purus, a, um  
**cimicifuga** Cimicifuga, ae f  
**cinchona** cinchona, ae f  
**cinnamon** cinnamomum, i n  
**citrate** citras, ātis m  
**citric** citricus, a, um  
**citric acid** acidum citricum  
**clay** bolus, i f  
**clear** purus, a, um  
**closed by tap** operculatus, a, um  
**coated** obductus, a, um  
**cocoa** Cacāo (without a dictionary form)  
**cocoa butter** Oleum Cacao  
**cod fish** Asellus, i m  
**cod liver oil** oleum jecoris Aselli  
**codeine** Codeīnum, i n  
**cough** tussis, is f  
**cold** frigidus, a, um  
**collagen** collagenīcus, a, um  
**collodium** Collodium, i n  
**coltsfoot** Farfara, ae f  
**common (greated) plantain** Plantāgo, inis f  
**common** commūnis, e  
**common yarrow** Achillea millefolium (bot)  
**complex** compositus, a, um  
**complicated** complicatus,a ,um  
**compound, complex** compositus, a, um  
**compress, plegket** cataplasma, atis n  
**compressed** compressus, a, um  
**concentrated** concentratus, a, um  
**cone** strobilus, i m  
**coneflower** Echinacea, ae f  
**confection** confection, onis f  
**conserve** servo, āre 1  
**contagious** contagiosus, a, um  
**contraceptive** contraceptivum, i n  
**convergent** convergens, ntis f  
**cool** refrigerō āre 1  
**cooper** Cuprum, i n  
**cordiamin** Cordiaminum, i n  
**corglycon** Corglyconum, i n  
**coriander** Coriandrum, i n  
**cornflower** Centaurea, ae f  
**corrective** corrigens, ntis  
**cortex, bark** cortex, icis m  
**cotton** wool Gossypium, i n  
**cough** tussis, is f  
**cough dry** tussis sicca

**cough moist** tussis humida  
**cranberry** Oxycoccus, i n  
**cucumber** Cucumis, Cucumeris m  
**cudbear** Persio, onis f  
**currants** Ribes, is n  
**cut, cutting** tome, tomia  
**cut** concido, ěre 3  
**coltsfoot** Farfāra, ae f  
**copper** Cuprum, i n  
**corglycon** Corglyconum, i n  
**cotton wool** Gossypium, i n  
**coweberry** Vitis idea, ae f  
**cranberry** Oxycoccus, u m  
**cream** tremor, oris m  
**crystalized** crystallisatus, a, um  
**currant** Ribes, is n  
**cyanocobalamin** Cyanocobalaminum, i n

## D

**dandelion** Taraxacum, i n  
**day** dies, ei m  
**dear** Carum, i n  
**decoction** decoctum, i n  
**decoction to heal a cough** species pectorales  
**decolorized** decoloratus, a, um  
**deep** profundus, a, um  
**demulcent, softening** demulcens, entis  
**dendritic** arborescens, ntis  
**deodorized** deodoratus, a, um  
**desinfection** desinfectio, onis f  
**dibazol** Dibazolum, i n  
**dibiomycine** Dibiomycinum, i n  
**dicain** Dicainum, i n  
**difficult** difficilis, e  
**digitalis, foxglove (medical plant)** Digitalis, is  
 m  
**dill** Anethum, i n  
**diluted** dilūtus, a, um  
**dimedrol** Dimedrōlum, i n  
**dioxide** Dioxidum, i n  
**diprophyllin** Diprophyllinum, i n  
**direct** rectus, a, um  
**disease, illness** morbus, i m  
**dissolve** solve, ěre 3  
**dispense** dispense, āre 1  
**distill** destillo, āre 1  
**distilled** destillatus, a, um  
**distilled water** aqua destillata  
**diuretic** diureticus, a, um

**diuretic collection** species diureticae  
**divergent** divergens, ntis m  
**divide** divide, ěre 3  
**dose** dosis, is f  
**dragee** dragee  
**drink** bibo, ěre 3  
**dried** excicatus, a, um  
**drop (of liquid)** gutta, ae f  
**drops** dragées  
**drug** medicamentum, i n  
**dry** siccus, a, um  
**dry extract** extractum siccum  
**dust thoroughly** conspergo, ěre 3

## E

**ear drops** otoguttae  
**each** ana  
**effect** effectus, us m  
**effervescent** effervescens (adj)  
**elder** Sambucus, i f  
**elixir** elixir, iris n  
**emulsion** emulsum, i n  
**endocrine** endocrinus, a, um  
**enteric soluble** enterosolubilis, e  
**ephatin** Ephatīnum, i n  
**ephedra** Ephedra, ae f  
**ephedrine** Ephedrinum, i n  
**equal** aequalis, e  
**equally, in equal parts** ana  
**ergot** Ergota, ae f  
**ergotal** Ergotalum, i n  
**erycycline** Erycyclinum, i n  
**eryhaem** Eryhaemum, i n  
**erynit** Erynītum, i n  
**erythromycin** Erythromycinum, i n  
**erythrophosphate** Erythrophosphatidum, i n  
**escape** turio, onis n  
**ethacridine** Aethacridinum, i n  
**ethanol** Ethanolum, i n  
**ethazol** Aethazolum, i n  
**ethazol sodium** Aethazolum-natrium, i n  
**ether** aether, ěris m  
**ethereal** aethereus, a, um  
**ethyl** Aethylium, i n  
**ethylic** aethylicus, a, um  
**ethyl spirit; ethyl alcohol** spiritus aethylicus  
**eucalypt** Eucalyptus, i f  
**euphylline** Euphyllinum, i n  
**every hour** quaque hora

**ex(Abl.)** of, from  
**exactly** exacte  
**existing in spring** vernalis, e  
**expectorant** expectorans, antis  
**extend** extendo, ēre 3  
**external** externus, a, um  
**extract** extractum, i n  
**extraction** extractio, onis f  
**extract** extractum , i n  
**eye** oculus, i m  
**eye drops** oculoguttae

## F

**fast** cyto  
**fat** adeps, adipis m  
**fat** adiposus, a, um  
**fatty, adipose** pinguis, e  
**feed** nutrio, īre 4  
**fennel** Foeniculum, i n  
**feracryl** “Feracrylum” (Feracrylum, i n)  
**fern** Filix, icis f  
**fever** febris, is f  
**fibrolysin** Fibrolysīnum, i n  
**field** arvensis, e  
**film (ophthalmic)** lamella, ae f; membranūla,  
    ae f  
**fine** subtilis, e  
**finest** subtilissimus, a, um  
**filter, filtrate** filtro, āre 1  
**finest** subtilissimus, a, um  
**finish** finio, īre 4  
**five times** quinques  
**fizzing** spargens, ntis  
**flax** Linum, i n  
**flax seed** Linum usitatissimum  
**flower** flos, floris m  
**fluid (liquid)** fluidus, a, um  
**fluorine** Fluorum, i n  
**folic** folicus, a, um  
**folic acid** acidum folicum  
**food** cibus, i m  
**for pro (Abl.); ad (Acc.) + usum**  
**forest** silvester, tris, tre  
**for adults** pro adultis  
**for bath** pro balneo  
**for a day** pro die  
**for a dose** pro dosi  
**for children** pro infantibus  
**for external use** ad usum externum

**for internal use** ad usum internum  
**for parenteral use** ad usum parenteralem  
**for personal use** ad usum proprium  
**for the injections** pro injectionibus  
**for veterinary use** ad usum veterinarium  
**four times** quater  
**foxglove** Digitālis, is f  
**fragrant** aromaticus, a, um  
**fresh** recens, recentis  
**friend** amicus, i m  
**fruit** fructus, us m  
**fruit decoction** decoctum fructuum  
**fungus** fungus, i m  
**furacillin** Furacillīnum, i n  
**furazolidone** Furazolidōnum, i n

## G

**galanthamin sunflower** Galanthaminum, i n  
**galipot** olla, ae f  
**gargle** gargarisma, atis f  
**garlic** Allium, i n  
**garlic** Allium sativum( bot.)  
**garling water** gargarisma, atis n  
**gastric** gastricus, a, um stomachicus, a, um  
**gastric collection** species stomachicae  
**gelatinous** gelatinosus, a, um  
**Gelsemium, i n** yellow jessamine  
**gentian** Gentiana, ae f  
**ginger** Zingiber, eris n  
**ginseng** Ginseng  
**give** do, dāre 1  
**gland** glandula, ae f  
**glass** 1) vitrum, i n; 2) vitreus, a, um  
**globule** globulus, i m  
**gluconate** gluconas, ātis m  
**glucose** Glucōsum, i n  
**glutaminic** glutaminīcus, a, um  
**glyceric** glycerinōsus, a, um; glycerinatus, a,  
    um  
**glycerine** Glycerolum, i n  
**glycodyn** Glycerīnum, i n  
**glycin** Glycīnum, i n  
**glycyram** Glycyramum, i n  
**glycoside** Glycosidum, i n  
**gold** Aurum, i n  
**good** bonus, a, um  
**granule** granūlum, i n  
**grape** Uva, ae f  
**grass** herba, ae f

**gray, grey** cinereus, a, um  
**green** viridis, e  
**grow** physis  
**guelder-rose** Viburnum, i n  
**gum** gummi

## H

**haemophbin** Haemophobīnum, i n  
**haemostatic** haemostaticus, a, um  
**hair** pilus, i m  
**half hard** semisolidus, a, um  
**hard** durus, a, um  
**hawthorn** Crataegus, i f  
**herb, grass** herba, ae f  
**health** sano, āre 1  
**hear** audio, īre 4  
**healthy** sanus, a, um  
**henbane** Hyoscyamus, i m  
**hepatic** hepaticus, a, um  
**herb, plant** herba, ae f  
**honey** mel, melis n  
**hop** Humulus lupulus (bot.)  
**horn** cornu, us n  
**horse-tail; shave grass** Equisentum, i n  
**hot** calidus, a, um  
**hour** hora, ae f  
**hydrobromide** hydrobromidum, i n  
**hydrocarbonate** hydrocarbōnas, ātis m  
**hydrochloric** hydrochlorīcus, a, um  
**hydrochloride** hydrochlorīdum, i n  
**hydrocortisone** Hydrocortisonum, i n  
**hydrocyanic acid** acidum hydrocyanicum  
**hydroiodide** hydroiodidum, i n  
**hydrogen** Hydrogenium, i n  
**hydrosulfuric acid** acidum hydrosulfuricum  
**hydrotartrate** hydrotartras, ātis m  
**hydroxide** hydroxýdum, i n  
**hypertonic** hypertonicus, a, um

## I

**ichthyol** Ichthyōlum, i n  
**icy** glaciālis, e  
**immediately** statim  
**immortelle** Helichrysum, i n  
**impairment of digestion** dyspepsia, ae f  
**in in** (in pharmaceutical terms with Ablative )  
**in cerated paper** in charta cerata  
**influence vaccine** vaccinum gripposum  
**infusion** infusum, i n

**inhalation** inhalatio, ūnis f  
**injectable** injectabilis, e  
**injection** injectio, ūnis f  
**in such doses** tales doses  
**in sufficient amount** quantum satis  
**internal** internus, a, um  
**in the best way** optime  
**into the bottle** ad vitrum  
**intramuscular** intramuscūlāris, e  
**intranasal** intranasālis, e  
**intratracheal** intratracheālis, e  
**intravenous** intravenōsus, a, um  
**introduction** inductio, ūnis f  
**iodide** iodidum, i n  
**iodine** Iōdum, i n  
**invert** verto, ēre 3  
**iron** Ferrum, i n  
**isotonic** isotonīcus, a, um

## J

**Jar** amphora, ae f  
**Jasmine** Jasminum, i n  
**jelly** gelatinosus, a, um  
**juice** succus, i m  
**juniper** Juniperus, i f

## K

**Keratin** keratinum, i n  
**Kordigit** Cordigitum, i n

## L

**label** signo, are 1  
**lactate** lactas, atis m  
**lactic** lacticus, a, um  
**lactic acid** acidum lacticum  
**lard** axungia porcina  
**large pill** bolus, i m  
**lavender** Lavandula, ae f  
**laxative** laxans, ntis  
**lead** Plumbum, i n  
**leaf** folium, i n  
**left** sinister, tra, trum  
**lemon** Citrus limon (bot.)  
**licorice** Glycyrrhīza, ae f  
**life** vita, ae f  
**lily of the valley** Convallaria, ae f  
**lime** calx, calcis f  
**linden** Tilia, ae f

**liniment** linimentum, i n  
**lipoic** lipoīcus, a, um  
**lipoic acid** acidum lipoicum  
**liquid** fluidus, a, um  
**liquid ammonia** solutio Ammonii (um, n)  
caustici  
**liquid anise ammonia** liquor Amonii anisatus  
**liquid extract** extractum fluidum  
**liquor** liquor, oris  
**listen** audio, ire 4  
**lithium** Lithium, i n  
**liver** hepar, atis n  
**liver of sea fish** jecur, oris n  
**living** vivus, a, um  
**long** longus, a, um  
**lotion** lotio, onis f  
**lycopodium** lycopodium ,i n

## M

**made, to be** fieri; **let it be made** fiat (pl. fiant)  
**magnesium** Magnesium, i n  
**magnesium** Magnum, i n  
**maize** Zea mays (bot.)  
**male tern** Filix (f) mas (Filicis maris)  
**malt** maltum, i n  
**manganese** Manganum, i n  
**many** multus, a, um  
**marigold** Calendula officinalis  
**maritime** maritimus, a, um  
**marsh-mallow** Althaea officinalis  
**mass** massa, ae f  
**matter** res, rei f  
**matricary** Chamomilla, ae f  
**may** majalis, e  
**meal** cibus, i m  
**measles** Varicella, ae f  
**medicament** medicamentum, i n  
**medicinal** medicinālis, e  
**melissa** Melissa, ae f (herb)  
**menthol** Mentholūm, i n  
**mercury** Hydrargyrūm, i n  
**methyl** Methylium, i n  
**methylene** Methylenum, i n  
**methylsalicilate** Methylī salicylas  
**methyluracil** Methyluracīlum, i n  
**milfoil** Millefolium, i n  
**milk** lac, lactis n  
**milk sugar, lactose** saccharum lactis  
**mint** Mentha, ae f

**mirth** Myrtlium, i n  
**mix** misceo, ēre 2  
**ixture** mixtura, ae f  
**ixture of dried plants** species, erum f (pl.)  
**ixture for drinking** mixtio pro potionē  
**moderately** modice  
**morphine** Morphīnum, i n  
**morpholong** Morpholongum, i n  
**motherwort** Leonurus, u m  
**mouth** os, oris n  
**mucilage** (liquid containing mucous substances) mucilago, inis f  
**mucosal** mucosus, a, um  
**mustard** Brassica nigra (bot)  
**mycoseptin** Mycoseptīnum, i n

## N

**name** nomen, īnis n  
**naphthalan** Naphthalānum, i n  
**narcose** narcōsis, is f  
**nasal drops** nasoguttæ  
**natural** naturalis, e  
**needle** Acus, us m  
**nenuphar** Nuphar, aris n  
**neomycin** Neomycīnum, i n  
**nettle** Urtica, ae f  
**nicotinic** nicotinīcus, a, um  
**nicotinic acid** acidum nicotinicum  
**nitrate** nitras, atis m  
**nitric** nitricus, a, um  
**nitric acid** acidum nitricum  
**nitrite** nitris, ītis m  
**nitrogen** Nitrogenium, i n  
**nitroglycerine** Nitroglycerīnum, i n  
**nitrous** nitrosus, a, um  
**nose** nasus, i m  
**norsulphazol** Norsulfazōlum, i n  
**nourishing** nutriens, entis  
**novocain** Novocainum, i n  
**number** numērus, i m  
**nut** Nux, nucis f

## O

**oak** Quercus, us f  
**oblique** obliquus, a, um  
**oestradiol** Oestradiōlum, i n  
**oil** oleum, i n  
**oily** oleōsus, a, um  
**ointment** unguentun, i n

**oleandomycin** Oleandomycīnum, i n  
**olive** Oliva, ae f  
**olive oil** oleum Olivaram  
**ophthalmic** ophthalmīcus, a, um  
**ophthalmic film** membranula (ae)  
    ophthalmica (us, a, um)  
**opium poppy** Papaver somniferun (bot)  
**or seu**  
**oral** peroralis, e  
**orange** Aurantium, i n  
**Oregon grape root** Berberis, idis f  
**ordinary** vulgaris, e  
**orotate** orotas, ātis m  
**oregano** Origānum vulgāre (bot)  
**ox** bos, bovis m  
**oxide** oxýdum, i n  
**oxygen** Oxygenium, i n

## P

**packet** fascicūlus, i m  
**paper** charta, ae f  
**papery** chartaceus, a, um  
**papaverine** Papaverīnum, i n  
**paraffin** paraffīnum, i n  
**part** pars, partis f  
**parenteral** parenteralis, e  
**paste, thick ointment** pasta, ae f  
**peach** Persīcum, i n  
**peachy oil** Oleum Persicōrum  
**peanut** Arachis, idis f  
**pectoral** pectorālis, e  
**pectoral species** species pectorales  
**peel** cortex, icis m  
**peeled** decorticatus, a, um  
**pencil** stilus, i m  
**pepper** Capsicum, i n, Pipper, eris n  
**pepper** piperītus, a, um  
**peper mint** Mentha pipperita, ae f  
**peroral** peroralis, e  
**peroxide** Peroxydum, i n  
**periwinkle** Vinca, ae f  
**pharmaceutical therapy** pharmacotherapia,  
    ae f  
**phenacetin** Phenacetinum, i n  
**phenobarbital** Phenobarbitālum, i n  
**phenoxyethylpenicillin -**  
    Phenoxyethylpenicillīnum, i n  
**phenyl** Phenylum, i n  
**phenylsalicylate** Phenylī salicylas

**phial** vitrum, i n; flaco, onis m  
**phosphate** phosphas, ātis m  
**phosphoric acid** acidum phosphoricum  
**phosphorus** Phosphōrus, i m  
**phthalazol** Phthalazōlum, i n  
**phthivazid** Phthivazīdum, i n  
**phytin** Phytinum, i n  
**phytomenadion** Phytomenadiōnum, i n  
**pieplant** Rheum, i n  
**pill** pilula, ae f  
**pilled** depuratus, a, um  
**pilled from bark** decorticatus, a, um  
**pill mass** massa pilularum  
**plain** vulgaris, e  
**plant** herba, ae f  
**plantain** Plantāgo, inis f  
**plaster** emplastrum, i n  
**plastered** extensus, a, um  
**plastic** polyathylenīcus, a, um  
**platyphylline** Platiphyllīnum, i n  
**plum** Prunum, i n  
**plum-tree** Prunus, i f  
**poison** venenum, i n  
**Polyethylenoxide** Polyaethylenoxīdum, i n  
**polyvitaminous** polyvitaminosus, a, um  
**poppy** Papaver, eris m  
**portion** portio, onis f  
**potassium** Kalium i n  
**potatoes** Solanum tuberosum, i n  
**poultice** cataplasma, ātis n  
**powder** pulvis, ēris m  
**powdery** pulveratus, a, um  
**praegoestrol** Praegoestrolum, i n  
**precipitate** praecipitātus, a, um  
**prepare** paro, āre 1  
**prescribe** praescribo, ēre 3  
**prescription** prescriptio, ūnis f  
**present state** status presens  
**pressed** expressus, a, um  
**primrose** Primula, ae f  
**proper** proprius, a, um  
**pulverize** pulvero, āre 1  
**pulverized** pulveratus, a, um  
**pumpkin** Cucurbita, ae f  
**purified** depurātus, a, um  
**purified (about solid substances)** purificātus,  
    a um  
**purified water** aqua purificata  
**purgative** purgans, ntis

**purge** laxans, ntis  
**purgative collection** species laxantes  
**purple coneflower** Echinacea purpurea (bot.)  
**pyocid** Pyocidum, i n  
**pyridoxine** Pyridoxinum, i n  
**pyromecain** Pyromecainum, i n

## Q

**Quinine** Cinchona, ae f  
**quickly, urgently** cito  
**quinsy** angina, ae f; tonsillitis

## R

**raspberry** Rubus (i m) ideus  
**recent, fresh** recens, ntis  
**recess** recessus, us m  
**rectal** rectālis, e  
**rectified (about liquid substances)**  
    rectificātus, a, um  
**rectum** rectum, i n  
**red** ruber, bra, brum  
**red billberry** Vitis idea  
**reed** Calamus, i m  
**remedy** remedium, i n  
**renovated** reductus, a, um  
**repeat** repeto, ēre 3  
**resin** pix, picis f  
**respiratory** respiratorius, a, um  
**rhamnus** Frangūla, ae f  
**rhizome** rhizōma, ātis n  
**rhubarb** Rheum, i n  
**riboflavin** Riboflavīnum, i n  
**rice** Oryza, ae f  
**rifathyroin** Rifathyroinum, i n  
**right** dexter, tra, trum  
**roentgenoscopy** rentgenum, i n  
**root** radix, īcis f  
**rose** Rosa, ae f  
**rosemary** Ledum, i n  
**rowan-tree** Sorbus, i f  
**rubbed** (con)tritus, a, um  
**rubeolla, German measles** Rubeola, ae f  
**rumex, icis f** yellow dock  
**rye** Secale, is n

## S

**sage, clary** Salvia, ae f  
**sage brush** Absinthium, i n

**salicylate** salicylas, ātis m  
**salicylic** salicylīcus, a, um  
**salicylic acid** acidum salicylicum  
**salt** sal, is m (or n)  
**Saponaria, ae f** saponaria  
**sarcolysin** Sarcolysīnum, i n  
**seabuckthorn** Hippophaë, es f  
**sea weed** Laminaria, ae f; alga, ae f  
**seed** semen, īnis n  
**seminal** seminalis, e  
**senna** Cassia, ae f  
**serum** serum, i n  
**serum against diphtheria** serum  
    antidiphthericum  
**serum against gangrenous** serum  
    antigangrenosum  
**serve** servo, āre 1  
**shallow, shred, fine** subtilis, e  
**shepherd's purse** Bursa (ae) pastoris  
**schizandra** Schizandra, ae f  
**short** brevis, e  
**sick** aegrotus, i m  
**sign** signo, āre 1  
**silicon** Silicium, i n  
**silver** Argentum, i n  
**simple** simplex, īcis  
**simple syrup** sirupus Sacchari  
**skin** derma, atis n, cutis, is f  
**slipping** somnifer, era, erum  
**snakeroot** Serpentaria, ae f  
**sodium** Natrium, i n  
**soft** mollis,e  
**soluble** solubīlis, e  
**solute** solvo, ēre 3  
**soluthizone** Soluthizōnum, i n  
**solution** solutio, īnis f  
**slowly (the action)** lente  
**small** parvus, a, um  
**soporific** somnifer, a, um  
**species** species, īrum f (only plur.)  
**spirit (alcohol)** spirītus, us m  
**spirituous** spirituōsus, a, um  
**sponge** spongia, ae f  
**spread to extend**, ēre 3  
**spring (of water)** fontanus, a, um  
**spring vernalis**, e  
**spring Adonis** Adonis, idis vernalis;  
    sping pheasant's eye  
**spring water** aqua fontata

- squill** scilla, ae f  
**squatina** Bidens, ntis f  
**stabilized** stabilisatus, a, um  
**starch** Amylum, i n  
**starch capsule** capsula amylacea  
**state** status, us m  
**stems** caulis, is m  
**sterile** sterilis, e  
**sterilize** sterilizo, āre 1  
**sterilized** sterilisatus, a, um  
**sticky** adhaesivus, a, um  
**stigma** Stigma, ātis n  
**stomach** gaster, tris f  
**stomach tincture** tinctura stomachica  
**stomachic, gastric** stomachicus, a um  
**strain** colo, āre 1  
**streptocide** Streptocidum, i n  
**strong** fortis, e  
**strophantidine** Strophanthīnum, i n  
**strophanthus** Strophanthus, i m  
**study of physical and chemical properties of medicinal substances** biopharmaceutica, ae f  
**sublingual** sublinguālis, e  
**subsidiary** adjuvans, ntis  
**substance** substantia, ae f  
**such** talis, e  
**sugar** Sacchārum, i n  
**sulfuric acid** acidum sulfuricum  
**sulfacyl** Sulfacylum, i n  
**sulfadimezine** Sulfadimezinum, i n  
**sulphacyl sodium** Sulfacylum-natrium, i n  
**sulphadimezine** Sulfadimezīnum, i n  
**sulphadimidine** Sulfadimidīnum, i n  
**sulphate** sulfas, ātis m  
**sulphur** Sulfur, ūris n  
**sunflower** Helianthus, i m  
**suppository** suppositorium, i n  
**suspension** suspensio, ūnis f  
**synoestradiol** Synoestrōlum, i n  
**synthomycine** Synthomycīnum, i n  
**syrup** sirūpus, i m  
**system** systema, ātis n  
**swampy, uliginous** paluster, tris, tre  
**sweet** dulcis, e  
**sweet almond** Amygdala dulcis  
**sweet-root** Glycyrrhīza, ae f
- take** recipio, ēre 3  
**talc** talcum, i n  
**tansy** Tanacetum, i n  
**tar** pix liquida  
**taraxacum** Taraxacum, i n  
**tartaric** tartaricus, a um  
**taste (+noun)** gustatorius, a, um; gustus, us m  
**tea** thea, ae f  
**terrilytine** Terrilytīnum, i n  
**testoenat** Testoenātum, i n  
**tetracycline** Tetracyclīnum, i n  
**theobromine sodium**  
Theobrominum-natrium, i n  
**theophylline** Theophyllīnum, i n  
**theophedrine** Theophedrinum, i n  
**thermopsis** Thermopsis, idis f  
**thick (dense)** spissus, a, um  
**thickened extract** extractum spissum  
**thin** tenuis, e  
**thioacetazone** Thioacetazōnum, i n  
**thiosulphate** Thiosulphas, atis m  
**through** per (with Acc.)  
**thymalin** Thymalinum, i n  
**thyreoidin** Thyreoidinum, i n  
**tincture** tinctura, ae f  
**thymogen** Thymogēnum, i n  
**thyreoidin** Thyreoidīnum, i n  
**tincture** tinctūra, ae f  
**tormentil** Tormentilla, ae f  
**toothache** odontalgia, ae f  
**toxoid** anatoxinum, i n  
**toxoid tetanus** anatoxinum tetanicum  
**transdermal** transdermalis, e  
**treat** curo, āre 1  
**treatment by means of medical plants**  
phytotherapia, ae f  
**tree** arbor, oris f  
**triturate** tere, ēre 3  
**trituration** trituratio, ūnis f  
**turn** verto, ēre 3  
**turpentine** Terebinthina, ae f  
**turpentine oil** oleum Terebinthinae  
**twice** bis  
**typhoid vaccine** Salmonellae typhi

## T

**tablet** tabuletta, ae f

## U

- under** sub (prep. Ablat.)  
**under the skin** subcutaneus, a, um  
**up to** ad

**urinary** urinarius, a, um  
**urological** urologicus, a, um  
**use** usus, us m

## V

**vaccine against rabies** vaccinum antirabicum  
**vaginal** vaginālis, e  
**valerian** Valeriāna, ae f  
**validol** Validōlum, i n  
**vanilla** vanilla, ae f  
**vanillin** vanillinum, i n  
**vaseline** Vaselineum, i n  
**vegetable** vegetabilis, e  
**vegetable sulphur** Lycopodium, i n  
**vehicle, agent used as a solvent in the solution** remedium constituens  
**venoum, poison** venenum, i n  
**very quickly** citissime  
**veterinary** veterinarius, a, um  
**viburnum** Viburnum, i n  
**vinegar** acetum, i n  
**vinilin** Vinylinum, i n  
**violet** Viola, ae f  
**virginal** virginalis, e  
**viscous** spissus, a, um  
**vitamin** vitaminum, i n  
**vitreous** vitreus, a, um  
**volatile** volatilis, e  
**vomiting** vomitus, a, um

## W

**warm water** aqua fervens  
**water** aqua, ae f  
**water for the injection** aqua pro injectione  
**waterless** aquosus, a, um; anhydricus, a, um  
**water lily** Nufar, aris n  
**water pepper** Polygonum, i n  
**wax** cera, ae f  
**wax-coated, cerated** ceratus, a, um  
**weak (in action)** mitis, e  
**web foot** Tormentilla, ae f  
**well** bene  
**wheat** Tritīcum, i n  
**white** albus, a, um  
**white clay** Argilla, ae f  
**wide** latus, a, um  
**wild rose** Rosa, ae f  
**wine** vinum, i n  
**wintergreen** Gaultheria, ae f

**witchhazel** hamamelis, idis f  
**with cum (Abl.)**  
**without** sine (with Abl.)  
**wool** lana, ae f  
**wool fat** lanolin, adeps lanae cum aqua  
**wormseed** chenopodium, i n  
**wormwood, sage brush** Absinthium, i n

## X

**Xeroform** Xeroformium, i n

## Y

**yarrow** Millefolium, i n  
**yeast** fermentum, i n  
**yellow** flavus, a, um  
**yellow** luteus, a, um  
**yellow dock** rumex, icis f  
**yellow Jessamine** Gelsemium, i n  
**yolk (of egg)** vitellus, i m

## Z

**Zea** zea, ae f  
**zinc** Zincum

## **Literature:**

1. The Latin Language and Medical Terminology Basics: textbook (III—IV a. l.) / L.Yu. Smolska, O.H. Pylypiv, P.A. Sodomora et al.; edited by L.Yu. Smolska. — 4rd edition. — K.: AUS "Medicine", 2012. — 400 p.
2. Latin for pharmacy students: textbook / Ye. I. Svetlichnaya, I. A. Tolok, Ye. A. Volobuyeva; Nat. univ. of pharmacy. — Kharkiv: NUPh: Golden pages, 2011. — 248 p.
3. Pharmacology / H. P. Rang, M. M. Dale, J. M. Ritter, R. J. Flower. — USA, 2007. — 829 p.
4. The Latin Language /Tsisik A.Z. — Minsk, 2015.— 212 p.
5. George Howe, John Beard. Latin for Pharmacists. — Philadelphia, 2012 — 146 p.
6. Joseph Ince. The Latin grammar of Pharmacy. — London, 1990.
7. Hillard A.E. Elementary Latin. — London, 1999.
8. Kunešová K. Latin for Pharmacists. — Hradec Králové, 2004.
9. Латинська мова та основи медичної термінології: Практичний курс. — Навч. посібник / Г.Г. Єрьомкіна, Т.Ф. Скуратова, Н.С. Іващук, Ю.О. Кравцова. — О.: ОДМУ, 2008. — 188 с. (Б-ка студента-медика). — Мова англ.

OnMedU